Matthew-Mina Hanna

Math Compendium

Contents

Acknowledgments . . . iv

I Precalculus 1

II First Year Calculus 2

1 Functions and Limits . . . 3
2 Derivatives . . . 15
3 Applications of the Derivative . . . 30
4 Integrals . . . 31
5 Integration Techniques . . . 32
6 Applications of the Integral . . . 39
7 Parametric and Polar Equations . . . 42
8 Sequences, Series, and Power Series . . . 43

III First Year Linear Algebra 47

9 Vectors . . . 50
10 Solving Linear Equations . . . 59
11 Subspaces . . . 66
12 The Einstein Summation Convention . . . 69

IV Multivariable Calculus 72

13 Functions of Several Variables . . . 73
14 Differentiation . . . 75
15 Multiple Integration . . . 81
16 Vector Analysis . . . 85
17 Integrals Over Curves and Surfaces . . . 86
18 Vector Analysis Integration Theorems . . . 88

V Ordinary Differential Equations 90

19 First Order Differential Equations . . . 91

20 Second Order Linear Equations 94

VI A Second Course in Linear Algebra 98

21 Vector Spaces 99

22 Span, Basis and Dimension 100

23 Linear Maps 101

24 Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors 105

25 Inner Product Spaces 107

26 Symplectic Vector Spaces 120

VII Real Analysis 121

27 The Real and Complex Number Systems 123

28 Basic Topology 125

29 Sequences and Series 130

30 Continuity 131

31 Differentiation 132

32 Measure Theory 134

VIII Complex Analysis 135

33 Complex Numbers 137

34 Complex Differentiation 138

IX Group Theory 141

35 Groups: Definitions and Examples 143

36 Group Actions 152

37 Direct and Semidirect Products 156

X Ring Theory 157

38 Introduction to Rings 159

XI Point-Set Topology 161

39 Topological Spaces and Continuous Functions 164

40 Connectedness and Compactness 170

XII Functional Analysis 172

41 Examples of New Spaces 173

42 Hilbert Spaces 176

43 Linear Maps 178

XIII Algebraic Topology 179

44 The Fundamental Group 181

XIV Manifolds 184

45 Definitions and Examples 185

46 Maps 186

47 Tangent Vectors 187

XV Lie Groups, Lie Algebras, and their Representations 189

48 Definition of a Lie Group and Basic Examples 191

49 Definition of Lie algebras 194

XVI Gauge Theory 195

50 Fiber Bundles 197

XVII First Course in Number Theory 198

51 Introduction 199

XVIII Appendix 201

A Naive Approach to Set Theory 203

B Inequalities 211

Bibliography 215

Acknowledgments

This project benefited from open-source tools and examples created by:

Evan Chen — The Napkin project served as the initial model for this compendium, and portions of its code are used throughout. GitHub: `https://github.com/vEnhance/napkin/`

Aareyan Manzoor (The TeXromancers) — Provided permission to reuse the code used for the front cover. GitHub: `https://aareyanmanzoor.github.io/Texromancers.html`

Gilles Castel (R.I.P.) — His work on integrating UltiSnips into LaTeX workflows (I use HyperSnips, a VS Code port) removed many bottlenecks and sped up development. GitHub: `https://github.com/gillescastel`

Precalculus

First Year Calculus

The primary resource for this part is [SCW20].

1 Functions and Limits . . . 3
1.1 Representations of Functions . . . 3
1.1.1 Functions . . . 3
1.2 A Catalog of Essential Functions . . . 3
1.3 New Functions from Old . . . 4
1.3.1 Transformations of Functions . . . 4
1.4 The Tangent and Velocity Problems . . . 7
1.5 Limits . . . 8
1.5.1 Sequences . . . 10
1.6 Continuity . . . 13
1.6.1 The Intermediate Value Theorem . . . 13

2 Derivatives . . . 15
2.1 Rates of Change . . . 15
2.2 Derivative Rules . . . 16
2.2.1 Non-negative Integer Powers . . . 16
2.2.2 Linearity Properties of the Derivative . . . 17
2.2.3 Derivatives of Products and Quotients of Functions . . . 18
2.2.4 Chain Rule . . . 22
2.2.5 Derivatives of Trigonometric Functions . . . 22
2.2.6 Derivatives of Logarithmic and Exponential Functions . . . 26
2.3 Implicit Differentiation . . . 27
2.4 Inverse Functions . . . 28

3 Applications of the Derivative . . . 30
3.1 Maximum and Minimum . . . 30

4 Integrals . . . 31
4.1 Approximations . . . 31
4.1.1 Riemann Sums . . . 31
Left and Right Riemann Sums . . . 31

5 Integration Techniques . . . 32
5.1 Integration by Parts . . . 32
5.2 Weierstrass Substitution . . . 36

6 Applications of the Integral . . . 39
6.1 Volumes . . . 39
6.2 Volumes of Solids of Revolution and Cylindrical Shells . . . 39

7 Parametric and Polar Equations . . . 42

8 Sequences, Series, and Power Series . . . 43
8.1 Convergence Tests . . . 43
8.1.1 The Integral Test and the Divergence Test . . . 43
8.1.2 Direct Comparison Test . . . 43
8.1.3 The Limit Comparison Test . . . 43
8.1.4 Alternating Series and Absolute Convergence . . . 43
8.1.5 The Root and Ratio Tests . . . 44
The Ratio Test . . . 44
The Root Test . . . 46

1 Functions and Limits

§1.1 Representations of Functions

§1.1.1 Functions

The primary objects of study in single-variable calculus are functions of a single real variable; i.e. functions that "eat" a real number and spit out a (not necessarily different) real number.

§1.2 A Catalog of Essential Functions

Example 1.2.1.
Suppose a drug X has a half-life of 45 minutes in the blood stream and that it is not safe to have more than 175mg of the drug in your blood. If Alice took a 120mg dose, how long does she have to wait until she can take another 120mg dose?
Alice needs to wait until her current drug level drops below 55 mg (since $55 + 120 = 175$). We need to determine the time when Alice has less than 55 mg of drug X left in her system, so we have

$$120\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{\frac{t}{45}} < 55.$$

Dividing both sides by 120,

$$\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{\frac{t}{45}} < \frac{55}{120} = \frac{11}{24}. \tag{1.2.1}$$

Taking the natural logarithm of both sides,

$$\frac{t}{45}\ln\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) < \ln\left(\frac{11}{24}\right).$$

Since $\ln\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) < 0$, dividing both sides by this negative number flips the inequality:

$$\frac{t}{45} > \frac{\ln\left(\frac{11}{24}\right)}{\ln\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)}.$$

Therefore,

$$t > 45 \cdot \frac{\ln\left(\frac{11}{24}\right)}{\ln\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)} \approx 51 \text{ minutes}.$$

Alice must wait at least 51 minutes before she can take drug X again.
Common Mistake: We can take a different route following from Equation (1.2.1). Namely, we might try taking $\log_{\frac{1}{2}}$ of both sides:

$$\frac{t}{45}\log_{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) < \log_{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\frac{11}{24}\right).$$

Since $\log_{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) = 1$, this would give us

$$\frac{t}{45} < \log_{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\frac{11}{24}\right),$$

or

$$t < 45\log_{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\frac{11}{24}\right) \approx 51 \text{ minutes}.$$

This solution would incorrectly suggest that Alice has to take drug X *before* 51 minutes, which is absurd.

What went wrong? The function $f(x) = \log_{\frac{1}{2}}(x)$ is decreasing since its base $\frac{1}{2} < 1$. For any decreasing function f, we have

$$x < y \iff f(x) > f(y).$$

When we applied the decreasing function $\log_{\frac{1}{2}}$ to both sides of the inequality, we should have flipped the inequality sign:

$$\frac{t}{45}\log_{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) > \log_{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\frac{11}{24}\right),$$

which gives us the correct answer: $t > 51$ minutes.

Exercise 1.2.1.
In the popular RPG **Pokémon**, there are different colorations of pocket monsters often referred to as "shiny" Pokémon. In the current games, the base odds of encountering a shiny Pokémon is $\frac{1}{4096}$. This can be optimized to $\frac{1}{683}$ through various in-game methods.

i) How many encounters are required to have a 50% chance of encountering a shiny at the base odds of $\frac{1}{4096}$?

ii) How many encounters are required to have a 50% chance of encountering a shiny at the optimized odds of $\frac{1}{683}$?

Solution.
We can tackle both **(i)** and **(ii)** simultaneously. Let p be the probability of encountering a shiny Pokémon in a single encounter, so $1-p$ is the probability of not encountering a shiny. The probability of not encountering a shiny in n independent encounters is $(1-p)^n$. We want this to equal 0.5:

$$(1-p)^n = 0.5$$

Taking the natural logarithm of both sides:

$$n\ln(1-p) = \ln(0.5)$$
$$n = \frac{\ln(0.5)}{\ln(1-p)}$$

For **(i)**, with $p = \frac{1}{4096}$:

$$n = \frac{\ln(0.5)}{\ln\left(1-\frac{1}{4096}\right)} \approx \frac{-0.693}{-0.000244} \approx 2839 \text{ encounters}$$

For **(ii)**, with $p = \frac{1}{683}$:

$$n = \frac{\ln(0.5)}{\ln\left(1-\frac{1}{683}\right)} \approx \frac{-0.693}{-0.00147} \approx 473 \text{ encounters}$$

This exercise shows that the median number of encounters to find a shiny at base odds is approximately 2839, not 4096. The value $\frac{1}{4096}$ represents the probability per encounter, not the expected number of encounters for a 50% success rate. ●

§1.3 New Functions from Old

Now that we have compiled a list of important functions, we will use them as building blocks to produce all the functions typically considered in a first year calculus course.

§1.3.1 Transformations of Functions

Definition 1.3.1.
Let $y = f(x)$ be any function and $c > 0$, then we can apply the following transformations to $f(x)$.

Upward shift:
$y = f(x) + c$ shifts the graph **up** by c units. If (x_0, y_0) is on the graph of $y = f(x)$, then $(x_0, y_0 + c)$ is on the graph of

$y = f(x) + c$.

Downward shift:
$y = f(x) - c$ shifts the graph **down** by c units. If (x_0, y_0) is on the graph of $y = f(x)$, then $(x_0, y_0 - c)$ is on the graph of $y = f(x) - c$.

Left shift:
$y = f(x + c)$ shifts the graph **left** by c units. If (x_0, y_0) is on the graph of $y = f(x)$, then $(x_0 - c, y_0)$ is on the graph of $y = f(x + c)$.

Right shift:
$y = f(x - c)$ shifts the graph **right** by c units. If (x_0, y_0) is on the graph of $y = f(x)$, then $(x_0 + c, y_0)$ is on the graph of $y = f(x - c)$.

Vertical stretch:
$y = af(x)$ **stretches** the graph vertically by a factor of $|a|$ if $|a| > 1$. If (x_0, y_0) lies on the graph of $y = f(x)$, then (x_0, ay_0) lies on the graph of $y = af(x)$.

Vertical compression:
$y = af(x)$ **compresses** the graph vertically if $0 < |a| < 1$. If (x_0, y_0) lies on the graph of $y = f(x)$, then (x_0, ay_0) lies on the graph of $y = af(x)$.

Horizontal compression:
$y = f(ax)$ **compresses** the graph horizontally by a factor of $\frac{1}{|a|}$ when $|a| > 1$. If (x_0, y_0) lies on the graph of $y = f(x)$, then $\left(\frac{x_0}{a}, y_0\right)$ lies on the graph of $y = f(ax)$.

Horizontal stretch:
$y = f(ax)$ **stretches** the graph horizontally by a factor of $\frac{1}{|a|}$ when $0 < |a| < 1$. If (x_0, y_0) lies on the graph of $y = f(x)$, then $\left(\frac{x_0}{a}, y_0\right)$ lies on the graph of $y = f(ax)$.

Reflection across x-axis:
$y = -f(x)$ reflects the graph across the x-axis. If (x_0, y_0) lies on the graph of $y = f(x)$, then $(x_0, -y_0)$ lies on the graph of $y = -f(x)$.

Reflection across y-axis:
$y = f(-x)$ reflects the graph across the y-axis. If (x_0, y_0) lies on the graph of $y = f(x)$, then $(-x_0, y_0)$ lies on the graph of $y = f(-x)$.

Definition 1.3.2.
Because functions output real numbers, we can combine them using familiar algebraic operations. Given two functions $f(x)$ and $g(x)$, we define:

Addition: $(f + g)(x) := f(x) + g(x)$

Subtraction: $(f - g)(x) := f(x) - g(x)$

Multiplication: $(f \cdot g)(x) := f(x) \cdot g(x)$

Division: $\left(\frac{f}{g}\right)(x) := \frac{f(x)}{g(x)}$ (as long as $g(x) \neq 0$)

Functions also support a new operation that is unique and fundamental to calculus: **function composition**.

Definition 1.3.3 (Function Composition).
Given two functions $f(x)$ and $g(x)$, the **composition** of f with g, written as $(f \circ g)(x)$, means:

$$(f \circ g)(x) := f(g(x))$$

In words, we first evaluate $g(x)$, and then plug that result into f.

Important: Composition is generally *not commutative*, meaning $f(g(x)) \neq g(f(x))$ in general.

Exercise 1.3.1.
Suppose that $g(x) = x - 1$ and that $f(x) = g(x^2 - 1)$. Find all x such that

$$(f \circ g)(x) = (g \circ f)(x)$$

Solution.
We can explicitly find $f(x)$

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= g(x^2 - 1) \\ &= \left[x^2 - 1\right] - 1 \\ f(x) &= x^2 - 2 \end{aligned}$$

Now to find $(f \circ g)(x)$

$$\begin{aligned} (f \circ g)(x) &= (x-1)^2 - 2 \\ &= x^2 - 2x + 1 - 2 \\ (f \circ g)(x) &= x^2 - 2x - 1 \end{aligned}$$

For $(g \circ f)(x)$

$$(g \circ f)(x) = \left(x^2 - 2\right) - 1 \, (g \circ f)(x) \qquad = x^2 - 3$$

Finally,

$$\begin{aligned} (g \circ f)(x) &= (f \circ g)(x) \\ x^2 - 3 &= x^2 - 2x - 1 \\ -3 &= -2x - 1 \\ -2 &= -2x \\ 1 &= x \end{aligned}$$

●

Example 1.3.1.
Let $f(x) = \dfrac{b}{x-a} + a$. Find $(f \circ f)(x)$, that is, compute $f(f(x))$.

First, recall that composition means we evaluate:

$$(f \circ f)(x) = f(f(x))$$

Step 1: Start with the inner function:

$$f(x) = \frac{b}{x-a} + a$$

Step 2: Plug this into the outer f. That is, replace every x in $f(x)$ with $f(x)$:

$$f(f(x)) = \frac{b}{\left(\frac{b}{x-a} + a\right) - a} + a$$

Step 3: Simplify the expression inside the denominator:

$$f(f(x)) = \frac{b}{\frac{b}{x-a}} + a$$

Step 4: Invert the inner fraction:

$$\frac{b}{\frac{b}{x-a}} = x - a$$

So:

$$f(f(x)) = (x-a) + a = x$$

$(f \circ f)(x) = \boxed{x}$

In the above example, we can say $f(x)$ is its own **inverse**.

Definition 1.3.4.
Given a function $f(x)$, another function $g(y)$ is called the **inverse function** of $f(x)$ if each undoes the effect of the other:

$$g(f(x)) = x \quad \text{for all } x \text{ in the domain of } f, \quad \text{and} \quad f(g(y)) = y \quad \text{for all } y \text{ in the domain of } g.$$

We often write $g = f^{-1}$.

A function is invertible if and only if it passes the **Horizontal Line Test**, or equivalently, if it is **strictly monotonic** (either strictly increasing or strictly decreasing) on its domain.

Example 1.3.2.
Let us test (without trying to find an explicit inverse) if the function

$$f(x) = x^3 + x - 4$$

has an inverse.
Let $h \neq 0$, if $f(x)$ is invertible then $f(x+h) - f(x)$ cannot be zero.

$$\begin{aligned} f(x+h) - f(x) &= \left[(x+h)^3 + (x+h) - 4\right] - \left[x^3 + x - 4\right] \\ &= \left[(x+h)^3 - x^3\right] + [(x+h) - x] + [-4 - (-4)] \\ &= (x+h-x)\left((x+h)^2 + x(x+h) + x^2\right) + h && \text{(Applying difference of cubes.)} \\ &= h\left(3x^2 + 2hx + h^2\right) + h \end{aligned}$$

It can be easily verified that when $h \neq 0$, the quadratic $3x^2 + 2hx + h^2 \geq 0$ for every $x \in \mathbb{R}$ (Setting $a = 3, b = 2h, c = h^2$ gives you a negative discriminant.) Since $f(x+h) - f(x)$ is the sum of positive terms (if h is positive) or the sum of negatives terms (if h is negative), $f(x+h) - f(x) \neq 0$ every $x \in \mathbb{R}$ and $h \neq 0$. As such, $f^{-1}(x)$ exists.
Now suppose we wanted to find $f^{-1}(2)$. Again, we don't need to calculate an explicit inverse. If $f^{-1}(2) = a$ then, by definition, $f(a) = -2$ So

$$\begin{aligned} f(a) &= -2 \\ a^3 + a - 4 &= -2 \\ a^3 + a &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

We can see that $f(1) = -2$ so $f^{-1}(-2) = 1$.

Exercise 1.3.2.
Suppose that $f : (-1, 1) \to \mathbb{R}$ be defined by

$$f(x) = \frac{x}{1 - x^2}.$$

Find f^{-1}.

Solution.
We apply the algorithm of exchanging y and x

$$x = \frac{y}{1 - y^2}.$$

●

§1.4 The Tangent and Velocity Problems

We now consider one of the central motivating problems of calculus:

Given a function $f(x)$, how do we find the equation of the line **tangent** to $f(x)$ at $x = a$?

While tangent lines can be difficult to find directly, we can start with a simpler question:

How do we find a **secant** line between two points $x = a$ and $x = b$ on the graph of f?

The slope of the secant line is given by:

$$m = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}$$

So the equation of the secant line is:

$$y = f(a) + \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}(x - a)$$

If we let b get arbitrarily close to a, we get an increasingly accurate approximation of the tangent line.

Example 1.4.1.
To estimate the slope of the tangent line of $y = \sin(x)$ at $x = 0$, we compute the slope of secant lines approaching $x = 0$. That is,

$$\text{slope} = \frac{\sin(b) - \sin(0)}{b - 0} = \frac{\sin(b)}{b}$$

We can produce the following table of secant slopes:

Value of b	$\frac{\sin(b)}{b}$
1.0	0.84147
0.5	0.95885
0.1	0.99833
0.01	0.99998
0.001	1.00000

As $b \to 0$, the secant slope $\frac{\sin(b)}{b} \to 1$. So we estimate:

$$\text{Slope of tangent line at } x = 0 \text{ is approximately } \boxed{1}.$$

Since $\sin(0) = 0$, the tangent line at $x = 0$ is:

$$y = \sin(0) + 1 \cdot (x - 0) = x$$

§1.5 Limits

Lemma 1.5.1.
$$\lim_{h \to 0} \frac{e^h - 1}{h} = 1$$

Proof.
Since $\left(1 + \frac{h}{n}\right)^n < e^h < \left(1 + \frac{h}{n}\right)^{n+1}$ for every natural number n and real number h, we have

$$\frac{\left(1 + \frac{h}{n}\right)^n}{h} < \frac{e^h - 1}{h} < \frac{\left(1 + \frac{h}{n}\right)^{n+1} - 1}{h}, \quad \text{if } h > 0. \tag{1.5.1}$$

$$\frac{\left(1 + \frac{h}{n}\right)^n}{h} > \frac{e^h - 1}{h} > \frac{\left(1 + \frac{h}{n}\right)^{n+1} - 1}{h}, \quad \text{if } h < 0. \tag{1.5.2}$$

First looking at $\dfrac{\left(1+\frac{h}{n}\right)^n}{h}$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\left(1+\frac{h}{n}\right)^n}{h} &= \frac{\sum_{j=0}^{n}\binom{n}{j}\left(\frac{h}{n}\right)^j - 1}{h}\\ &= \frac{\sum_{j=1}^{n}\binom{n}{j}\left(\frac{h}{n}\right)^j}{h}\\ &= \sum_{j=1}^{n}\binom{n}{j}\frac{h^{j-1}}{n^j}\\ &= \binom{n}{1}\frac{1}{n} + \sum_{j=2}^{n}\binom{n}{j}\frac{h^{j-1}}{n^j}\\ &= 1 + \sum_{j=2}^{n}\binom{n}{j}\frac{h^{j-1}}{n^j}\end{aligned}$$

So taking the limit as $h \to 0$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\left(1+\frac{h}{n}\right)^n}{h} &= \lim_{h\to 0}\left(1 + \sum_{j=2}^{n}\binom{n}{j}\frac{h^{j-1}}{n^j}\right)\\ &= 1\end{aligned}$$

For $\dfrac{\left(1+\frac{h}{n}\right)^{n+1} - 1}{h}$, we will similarly get

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\left(1+\frac{h}{n}\right)^{n+1} - 1}{h} &= \lim_{h\to 0}\left(1 + \sum_{j=2}^{n+1}\binom{n+1}{j}\frac{h^{j-1}}{n^j}\right)\\ &= 1\end{aligned}$$

Applying the squeeze theorem to inequalities (1.5.1) and (1.5.2), we see that

$$\boxed{\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{e^h - 1}{h} = 1}.$$

■

Exercise 1.5.1.
Find $\lim_{x\to\infty}\left(x - x\cos\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}\right)\right)\sin\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}\right)$.

Solution.
Let $t = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{x}}$ then

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{x\to\infty}\left(x - x\cos\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}\right)\right)\sin\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}\right) &= \lim_{t\to 0+}\left(\frac{1}{t^2} - \frac{1}{t^2}\cos(t)\right)\sin(t)\\ &= \lim_{t\to 0+}\frac{\sin(t)\left(1-\cos(t)\right)}{t^2}\\ &= \left[\lim_{t\to 0+}\frac{\sin(t)}{t}\right]\left[\lim_{t\to 0^+}\frac{1-\cos(t)}{t}\right]\\ &= 1\cdot 0\end{aligned}$$

So

$$\boxed{\lim_{x\to\infty}\left(x - x\cos\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}\right)\right)\sin\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}\right) = 0\,.}$$

●

§1.5.1 Sequences

Definition 1.5.1.
By a **sequence**, we mean a function

$$a : \{1, 2, \ldots, n, \ldots\} \to \mathbb{R},$$

which we usually write as

$$\{a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n, \ldots\},$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} a_1 &= a(1), \\ a_2 &= a(2), \\ &\vdots \\ a_n &= a(n), \\ &\vdots \end{aligned}$$

We say that a sequence $\{a_n\}$ is **convergent**, or that it **converges to the real number** L, if for every $\epsilon > 0$ there exists a sufficiently large N such that whenever $n > N$,

$$|a_n - L| < \epsilon.$$

A sequence is **divergent**, or said to **diverge**, if no such L exists.

Example 1.5.1.
Suppose a sequence is given by $a_n = \dfrac{2n-1}{n}$. Writing out the first members of this sequence, we have

$$\begin{aligned} a_1 &= \frac{2(1)-1}{(1)} = 1 \\ a_2 &= \frac{2(2)-1}{(2)} = \frac{3}{2} \\ a_3 &= \frac{2(3)-1}{(3)} = \frac{5}{3} \\ a_4 &= \frac{2(4)-1}{4} = \frac{7}{4} \\ &\vdots \end{aligned}$$

Notice that the difference between each successive terms decreases. Indeed if we define $b_n = a_{n+1} - a_n$ then

$$\begin{aligned} b_1 &= a_2 - a_1 = \frac{3}{2} - 1 = \frac{1}{2} \\ b_2 &= a_3 - a_2 = \frac{5}{3} - \frac{3}{2} = \frac{1}{6} \\ b_3 &= a_4 - a_3 = \frac{7}{4} - \frac{5}{3} = \frac{1}{12} \\ &\vdots \end{aligned}$$

While the tendency for b_n to go zero does not itself guarantee convergence, it is a good sign and indeed a_n converges. We can write

$$a_n = \frac{2n}{n} - \frac{1}{n} = 2 - \frac{1}{n}\,.$$

This suggests that a_n converges to 2. To show this, we can pick any $\epsilon > 0$ and can pick an n sufficiently large such that $n\epsilon > 1$

or $\frac{1}{n} < \epsilon$ Then

$$\begin{aligned}
|2 - a_n| &= \left|2 - \left(2 - \frac{1}{n}\right)\right| \\
&= \left|\frac{1}{n}\right| \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \\
&< \epsilon
\end{aligned}$$

We can do something similar to show that b_n converges to 0 since

$$\begin{aligned}
b_n &= a_{n+1} - a_n \\
&= \frac{2(n+1)-1}{n+1} - \frac{2n-1}{n} \\
&= \frac{n(2n+1) - (n+1)(2n-1)}{n(n+1)} \\
&= \frac{1}{n(n+1)}
\end{aligned}$$

As such the same n chosen for a_n is overkill since

$$\begin{aligned}
|0 - b_n| &= \left|-\frac{1}{n(n+1)}\right| \\
&= \frac{1}{n(n+1)} \\
&= \frac{1}{n+1}\frac{1}{n} \\
&< \frac{1}{n^2} \\
&< \epsilon^2 \\
&< \epsilon && \text{(If } \epsilon < 1\text{)}
\end{aligned}$$

So b_n converges "faster" than a_n.

Example 1.5.2.
Let

$$H_n = 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n} = \sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{1}{n}$$

This is called the **harmonic series**. Writing out the first couple of terms,we have

$$\begin{aligned}
H_1 &= 1 &&= 1 \\
H_2 &= 1 + \frac{1}{2} &&= \frac{3}{2} \\
H_3 &= 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} &&= \frac{11}{6} \\
H_4 &= 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{4} &&= \frac{25}{12} \\
H_5 &= 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{4} &&= \frac{137}{60} \\
&\vdots && \vdots
\end{aligned}$$

If we define $I_n = H_{n+1} - H_n$, it is clear that $I_n = \frac{1}{n+1}$, which converges to 0. But it is *not* the case that H_n converge to any real number L. To see this,

$$1+\frac{1}{2}+\underbrace{\frac{1}{3}+\frac{1}{4}}_{>\frac{1}{4}+\frac{1}{4}=\frac{1}{2}}+\underbrace{\frac{1}{5}+\frac{1}{6}+\frac{1}{7}+\frac{1}{8}}_{>\frac{1}{8}+\frac{1}{8}+\frac{1}{8}+\frac{1}{8}=\frac{1}{2}}+\cdots$$

This generalizes

$$1+\sum_{k=0}^{n}\frac{1}{2}<H_{2^{n+1}}$$

This shows that the harmonic series diverges (albeit very slowly) since I can make H_n as large as I want.

Exercise 1.5.2.
The sequence

$$x_n=\frac{4n^3-n^2+5n}{2n^3+6n^2-11}$$

converges. Find its limit.

Solution.
We can multiply the top and bottom by $\frac{1}{n^3}$ so

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{4n^3-n^2+5n}{2n^3+6n^2-11}\cdot\frac{\frac{1}{n^3}}{\frac{1}{n^3}}&=\frac{\frac{4n^3}{n^3}-\frac{n^2}{n^3}+\frac{5n}{n^3}}{\frac{2n^3}{n^3}+\frac{6n^2}{n^3}-\frac{11}{n^3}}\\&=\frac{4-\frac{1}{n}+\frac{5}{n^2}}{2+\frac{6}{n}-\frac{11}{n^3}}\end{aligned}$$

So as $n\to\infty$, the terms with n in the denominator get arbitrarily small so we can just ignore them so then all we have is

$$\boxed{\lim_{n\to\infty}\frac{4n^3-n^2+5n}{2n^3+6n^2-11}=2\,.}$$

●

Exercise 1.5.3.
Find the limit of the sequence

$$x_n=\sqrt{n+k}-\sqrt{n}$$

where k is a fixed constant.

Solution.
We have

$$\begin{aligned}\sqrt{n+k}-\sqrt{n}\cdot\frac{\sqrt{n+k}+\sqrt{n}}{\sqrt{n+k}+\sqrt{n}}&=\frac{n+k-n}{\sqrt{n+k}+\sqrt{n}}\\&=\frac{k}{\sqrt{n+k}+\sqrt{n}}\end{aligned}$$

Since n can be made arbitrarily large and k is fixed, we have

$$\boxed{\lim_{n\to\infty}\sqrt{n+k}-\sqrt{n}=0\,.}$$

●

Exercise 1.5.4.
Show that the sequence

$$x_n = \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (2n-1)}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \cdots (2n)}$$

converges.

Solution.
Notice that $x_n < x_{n-1}$ for every $n \geq 2$ since

$$x_n = x_{n-1} \cdot \frac{2n-1}{2n}.$$

Since the sequence is decreasing and bounded below by 0, it has no choice but to converge. ●

Exercise 1.5.5.
Show that the sequence

$$x_n = (-1)^n \frac{1}{n^2}$$

converges.

Solution.
For any $\epsilon > 0$, we can choose a sufficiently large n such that

$$\left| \frac{1}{n^2} \right| < \epsilon$$

the $(-1)^n$ does not change this. ●

§1.6 Continuity

§1.6.1 The Intermediate Value Theorem

We now state the Intermediate Value Theorem.

The Intermediate Value Theorem. If $f : [a, b] \to \mathbb{R}$ is continuous and N is any number between $f(a)$ and $f(b)$, then there exists at least one $c \in [a, b]$ such that $f(c) = N$.

Lemma 1.6.1.
Suppose that $f : [a, b] \to \mathbb{R}$ is continuous and that $f([a, b]) \subseteq [a, b]$ (that is, f maps the interval into itself). Then there exists at least one $c \in [a, b]$ such that $f(c) = c$.

Proof.
If $f(a) = a$ or $f(b) = b$, we are done. So let us assume otherwise. In particular, this means that $f(a) > a$ and $f(b) < b$. Define a function

$$g(x) := f(x) - x.$$

$g(x)$ is continuous as it is the sum of continuous functions. We also have that

$$g(a) = f(a) - a > 0 \quad \text{and} \quad g(b) = f(b) - b < 0.$$

By the Intermediate Value Theorem, there must be a $c \in (a, b)$ such that $g(c) = 0 = f(c) - c$ and hence, $f(c) = c$. ■

Exercise 1.6.1.
Let

$$f(x) = \sqrt{\frac{x+1}{|2x-1|}}.$$

i) Find the domain of $f(x)$.

ii) Determine which values of x (if any) are fixed points of $f(x)$. That is, find all x such that $f(x) = x$.

Solution.

i)
We require that the denominator be non-zero, so

$$|2x - 1| = 0 \iff 2x - 1 = 0.$$

Thus $x = \frac{1}{2}$ is not in the domain of $f(x)$. Next, we require that the expression inside the square root be non-negative. Since $|2x - 1|$ is always non-negative, we just need to check where $x + 1 \geq 0$, that is,

$$x + 1 \geq 0 \implies x \geq -1.$$

Therefore, the domain of $f(x)$ is

$$\left[-1, \frac{1}{2}\right) \cup \left(\frac{1}{2}, \infty\right).$$

ii)
We need to solve $f(x) = x$. Squaring both sides gives

$$\frac{x+1}{|2x-1|} = x^2.$$

Because of the absolute value, we must solve two equations:

$$\frac{x+1}{2x-1} = x^2 \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{x+1}{1-2x} = x^2.$$

Equivalently,

$$2x^3 - x^2 - x - 1 = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad 2x^3 - x^2 + x + 1 = 0.$$

By the rational root theorem, the possible rational roots are ± 1 and $\pm\frac{1}{2}$. In the context of this problem, we eliminate $x = \frac{1}{2}$. Testing each remaining rational root, we find that $x = -\frac{1}{2}$ satisfies the second equation. However, since the range of $f(x)$ is non-negative, $x = -\frac{1}{2}$ cannot be a fixed point.

Nonetheless, this shows that $2x + 1$ is a factor of $2x^3 - x^2 + x + 1$. Indeed,

$$2x^3 - x^2 + x + 1 = (2x + 1)(x^2 - x + 1),$$

and $x^2 - x + 1$ has no real roots. Therefore, that equation yields no real fixed points.

Now let us see whether the other equation, $2x^3 - x^2 - x - 1 = 0$, can yield one. Plugging in $x = 1$ gives

$$g(1) = 2 - 1 - 1 - 1 = -1 < 0,$$

and $x = 2$ gives

$$g(2) = 16 - 4 - 2 - 1 = 9 > 0.$$

Hence, by the Intermediate Value Theorem, there exists $\lambda \in (1, 2)$ such that $g(\lambda) = 0$, and thus $f(\lambda) = \lambda$. ●

2 Derivatives

§2.1 Rates of Change

Example 2.1.1.
Suppose the distance you have traveled (as a function of time) is given by $y = t^2$. What is your average velocity between $t = 1$ second and $t = 3$ seconds?

At time $t = 1$, you have traveled $y = 1^2 = 1$ unit, and at $t = 3$, you have traveled $y = 3^2 = 9$ units. The average velocity over this time interval is

$$\begin{aligned}\text{average velocity} &= \frac{\Delta\text{distance}}{\Delta\text{time}} \\ &= \frac{9-1}{3-1}\,\frac{\text{units}}{\text{second}} \\ &= \frac{8}{2}\,\frac{\text{units}}{\text{second}} = 4\,\frac{\text{units}}{\text{second}}.\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the average velocity is

$$\boxed{\text{average velocity} = 4\,\frac{\text{units}}{\text{second}}}.$$

Now suppose instead we want to find the average velocity between $t = 1$ second and $t = 2$ seconds.

At time $t = 2$, the distance traveled is $y = 2^2 = 4$ units. Then the average velocity is

$$\begin{aligned}\text{average velocity} &= \frac{\Delta\text{distance}}{\Delta\text{time}} \\ &= \frac{4-1}{2-1}\,\frac{\text{units}}{\text{second}} \\ &= \frac{3}{1}\,\frac{\text{units}}{\text{second}} = 3\,\frac{\text{units}}{\text{second}}.\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the average velocity over this shorter interval is

$$\boxed{\text{average velocity} = 3\,\frac{\text{units}}{\text{second}}}.$$

Example 2.1.2.
Now suppose the distance you have traveled is given by $y = t^3 + 1$. If you start a timer at $t_0 = 2$ seconds and end the timer 3 seconds later, what is your average velocity over that period?

The timer runs from $t = 2$ to $t = 5$. We compute the total change in distance over this interval:

$$y(2) = 2^3 + 1 = 8 + 1 = 9, \quad y(5) = 5^3 + 1 = 125 + 1 = 126.$$

Now compute the average velocity:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{average velocity} &= \frac{\Delta\text{distance}}{\Delta\text{time}} \\ &= \frac{126-9}{5-2}\,\frac{\text{units}}{\text{second}} \\ &= \frac{117}{3}\,\frac{\text{units}}{\text{second}} = 39\,\frac{\text{units}}{\text{second}}.\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the average velocity is

$$\boxed{\text{average velocity} = 39\,\frac{\text{units}}{\text{second}}}.$$

Now suppose instead that the timer runs for only 1 second, from $t = 2$ to $t = 3$. We compute the change in distance over this shorter interval:

$$y(2) = 2^3 + 1 = 9, \quad y(3) = 3^3 + 1 = 27 + 1 = 28.$$

Then the average velocity is

$$\begin{aligned} \text{average velocity} &= \frac{\Delta\text{distance}}{\Delta\text{time}} \\ &= \frac{28 - 9}{3 - 2} \frac{\text{units}}{\text{second}} \\ &= \frac{19}{1} \frac{\text{units}}{\text{second}} = 19 \frac{\text{units}}{\text{second}}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the average velocity over this shorter interval is

$$\boxed{\text{average velocity} = 19 \frac{\text{units}}{\text{second}}}.$$

Given a function $y = f(x)$ and two points on its graph, $(a, f(a))$ and $(b, f(b))$, we have two common approaches to finding the slope of the secant line connecting them. By taking an appropriate limit, we can then obtain the slope of the tangent line at a point.

In the first approach—illustrated in Example 2.1.1, we treat a as fixed and let the second point b move closer to a. The slope of the secant line is given by

$$m_{\text{secant}} = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a},$$

and the slope of the tangent line is defined as the limit:

$$m_{\text{tangent}} = \lim_{b \to a} m_{\text{secant}} = \lim_{b \to a} \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}.$$

In the second approach, used in Example 2.1.2, we express the second point as a displacement h from a, so that $b = a + h$. The secant slope becomes

$$m_{\text{secant}} = \frac{f(a + h) - f(a)}{(a + h) - a} = \frac{f(a + h) - f(a)}{h},$$

and again, we define the tangent slope as the limit:

$$m_{\text{tangent}} = \lim_{h \to 0} m_{\text{secant}} = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(a + h) - f(a)}{h}.$$

This motivates the following crucial definition.

Definition 2.1.1.
Let f be a function. If the following limit exists at $x = a$,

$$\lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(a + h) - f(a)}{h},$$

then this limit is called **the derivative of f at $x = a$**, and we denote it by $f'(a)$.

The **derivative function** $f'(x)$ is defined by

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(x + h) - f(x)}{h},$$

for all x at which this limit exists.

§2.2 Derivative Rules

§2.2.1 Non-negative Integer Powers

We will derive the derivative rules for functions of the form x^n, where $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$.

The simplest case is $y = 1$, an example of a constant function:

$$\begin{aligned} f'(a) &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(a+h)-f(a)}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{1-1}{h} && \text{Since } f(a) = f(a+h) = 1 \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0} 0 \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

So,

$$\boxed{\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[1] = 0} \tag{2.2.1}$$

Theorem 2.2.1 (The Power Rule for Derivatives).
For any $n \in \mathbb{N}$, we have

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[x^n\right] = n \cdot x^{n-1}$$

Proof.
We have taken care of the case $n = 0$ earlier. Now, if $n \neq 0$, consider $f(x) = x^n$. Then:

$$\begin{aligned} f'(a) &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(a+h)-f(a)}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{(a+h)^n - a^n}{h} && \text{Substitute } f(x) = x^n \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{\sum_{j=0}^{n} \binom{n}{j} a^{n-j} h^j - a^n}{h} && \text{Apply the binomial expansion to } (a+h)^n \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{\sum_{j=1}^{n} \binom{n}{j} a^{n-j} h^j}{h} && \text{Cancel the } a^n \text{ terms} \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0} \sum_{j=1}^{n} \binom{n}{j} a^{n-j} h^{j-1} && \text{Factor out } \frac{1}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0} \left[\binom{n}{1} a^{n-1} + \sum_{j=2}^{n} \binom{n}{j} a^{n-j} h^{j-1}\right] && \text{Separate the } j = 1 \text{ term} \\ &= \binom{n}{1} a^{n-1} + 0 && \text{Higher-order terms vanish as } h \to 0 \\ &= n \cdot a^{n-1} && \text{Since } \binom{n}{1} = n \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$\boxed{\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[x^n\right] = n \cdot x^{n-1}} \tag{2.2.2}$$

■

§2.2.2 Linearity Properties of the Derivative

The derivative satisfies two important linearity properties:

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[c \cdot f(x)] = c \cdot \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[f(x)] \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[f(x) + g(x)] = \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[f(x)] + \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[g(x)].$$

For every $c \in \mathbb{R}$ and differentiable functions $f(x)$ and $g(x)$. As always in mathematics, we require proof.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[c \cdot f(x)] &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{c \cdot f(x+h) - c \cdot f(x)}{h} && \text{Substitute into the definition of the derivative} \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0} c \cdot \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} && \text{Factor out the constant } c \\
&= c \cdot \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} && \text{Limit of a constant times a function is the constant times the limit} \\
&= c \cdot \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[f(x)].
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[f(x) + g(x)] &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{[f(x+h) + g(x+h)] - [f(x) + g(x)]}{h} && \text{Apply the definition of the derivative to the sum} \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x) + g(x+h) - g(x)}{h} && \text{Group terms by function} \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0} \left(\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} + \frac{g(x+h) - g(x)}{h} \right) && \text{Split the single fraction into two terms} \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} + \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{g(x+h) - g(x)}{h} && \text{Limit of a sum is the sum of the limits (when both exist)} \\
&= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[f(x)] + \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[g(x)].
\end{aligned}$$

With this new rule in our tool belt, we are now capable of taking derivatives of any polynomial function.

§2.2.3 Derivatives of Products and Quotients of Functions

It is **not** true that

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[f(x) \cdot g(x)] = \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[f(x)] \cdot \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[g(x)] \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[\frac{f(x)}{g(x)}\right] = \frac{\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[f(x)]}{\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[g(x)]}.$$

In fact, such rules would contradict the linearity of the derivative. For example, take any constant $c \neq 0$. Then,

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[c \cdot f(x)] &= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[c] \cdot \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[f(x)] \\
&= 0 \cdot \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[f(x)] = 0,
\end{aligned}$$

which contradicts the established rule:

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[c \cdot f(x)] = c \cdot \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[f(x)].$$

Instead, the correct rules are derived as follows.

Theorem 2.2.2 (The Product Rule for Derivatives).
Let f and g be differentiable functions. Then

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[f(x)g(x)] = f'(x)g(x) + f(x)g'(x)$$

Proof.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[f(x)\cdot g(x)] &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h)g(x+h)-f(x)g(x)}{h} && \text{Apply the definition of the derivative}\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h)g(x+h)-f(x)g(x+h)+f(x)g(x+h)-f(x)g(x)}{h} && \text{Add and subtract } f(x)g(x+h)\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\left[\frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h}\cdot g(x+h)+f(x)\cdot\frac{g(x+h)-g(x)}{h}\right] && \text{Group and factor each difference}\\
&= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[f(x)]\cdot g(x)+f(x)\cdot\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[g(x)]. && \text{Take the limit of each term separately}
\end{aligned}$$

■

Exercise 2.2.1.
Prove from the product rule that

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[f(x)^n\right] = n\cdot f(x)^{n-1}\cdot f'(x).$$

Solution.
We will prove this by induction. The case $n = 1$ is trivial so, for practice, let us set the base case equal to $n = 2$. So

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[f(x)^2\right] &= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[f(x)\cdot f(x)]\\
&= f'(x)\cdot f(x)+f(x)\cdot f'(x) && \text{(By The Product Rule for Derivatives)}\\
&= 2\cdot f'(x)\cdot f(x)
\end{aligned}$$

Now for the inductive step, suppose that we have shown the result up to $n = k$. Then for the case $n = k + 1$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[f(x)^{k+1}\right] &= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[f(x)\cdot f(x)^k\right]\\
&= f'(x)\cdot f(x)^k + f(x)\cdot\left(f(x)^k\right)' && \text{(By The Product Rule for Derivatives)}\\
&= f'(x)\cdot f(x)^k + f(x)\cdot\left(k\cdot f(x)^{k-1}\cdot f'(x)\right) && \text{(Applying the inductive hypothesis)}\\
&= f'(x)\cdot f(x)^k + k\cdot f(x)^k\cdot f'(x)\\
&= f'(x)\cdot f(x)^k\cdot(1+k)\\
&= (k+1)\cdot f(x)^k\cdot f'(x)
\end{aligned}$$

This completes the induction. ●

Exercise 2.2.2.
Use the preceding exercise to extend the power rule to positive rational exponents.

Solution.
Suppose that we have $x^{\frac{p}{q}}$, where $p, q \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$. Then, by definition,

$$\left(x^{\frac{p}{q}}\right)^q = x^p.$$

Now we differentiate both sides to get

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[\left(x^{\frac{p}{q}}\right)^q\right] &= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[x^p\right]\\
q\cdot\left(x^{\frac{p}{q}}\right)^{q-1}\cdot\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[x^{\frac{p}{q}}\right] &= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[x^p\right] && \text{(Applying the result of the previous exercise.)}\\
q\cdot\left(x^{\frac{p}{q}}\right)^{q-1}\cdot\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[x^{\frac{p}{q}}\right] &= px^{p-1} && \text{(By the Power Rule)}\\
q\cdot x^{\frac{p\cdot(q-1)}{q}}\cdot\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[x^{\frac{p}{q}}\right] &= px^{p-1}
\end{aligned}$$

Now we can solve for $\frac{d}{dx}\left[x^{\frac{p}{q}}\right]$.

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[x^{\frac{p}{q}}\right] = \frac{p}{q} \cdot x^{p-1} \cdot x^{-\frac{p\cdot(q-1)}{q}}$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[x^{\frac{p}{q}}\right] = \frac{p}{q} \cdot x^{\frac{p}{q}-1} \qquad \text{(Verify this.)}$$

This completes the proof. ●

Exercise 2.2.3.
Use the product rule to show that the power rule extends to negative rational exponents.

Solution.
Let r be a positive rational number. Then

$$1 = x^{-r} \cdot x^{r}.$$

Taking the derivative of both sides with respect to x, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{dx}[1] &= \frac{d}{dx}\left[x^{-r} \cdot x^{r}\right] \\
0 &= \frac{d}{dx}\left[x^{-r} \cdot x^{r}\right] && \text{Derivative of a constant is zero} \\
&= \frac{d}{dx}\left[x^{-r}\right] \cdot x^{r} + x^{-r} \cdot \frac{d}{dx}\left[x^{r}\right] && \text{By the Product Rule} \\
&= \frac{d}{dx}\left[x^{-r}\right] \cdot x^{r} + rx^{-r} \cdot x^{r-1} \\
&= \frac{d}{dx}\left[x^{-r}\right] \cdot x^{r} + rx^{-1}.
\end{aligned}$$

Solving for $\frac{d}{dx}\left[x^{-r}\right]$, we find:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{dx}\left[x^{-r}\right] \cdot x^{r} &= -rx^{-1} \\
\frac{d}{dx}\left[x^{-r}\right] &= -rx^{-r-1}.
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore the power rule

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[x^{s}\right] = sx^{s-1}$$

holds for all negative rational numbers $s = -r$. ●

Theorem 2.2.3 (The Quotient Rule for Derivatives).
Let f and g be differentiable functions, and suppose $g(x) \neq 0$. Then

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[\frac{f(x)}{g(x)}\right] = \frac{f'(x)g(x) - f(x)g'(x)}{g(x)^2}$$

Proof.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{dx}\left[\frac{f(x)}{g(x)}\right] &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\dfrac{f(x+h)}{g(x+h)}-\dfrac{f(x)}{g(x)}}{h}\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\dfrac{f(x+h)g(x)-f(x)g(x+h)}{g(x+h)g(x)}}{h}\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\dfrac{f(x+h)g(x)-f(x)g(x)-f(x)g(x+h)+f(x)g(x)}{g(x+h)g(x)}}{h} && \text{Add and subtract } f(x)g(x) \text{ in the numerator}\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\dfrac{f(x+h)g(x)-f(x)g(x)-f(x)g(x+h)+f(x)g(x)}{h}}{g(x+h)g(x)}\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\dfrac{f(x+h)g(x)-f(x)g(x)}{h}-\dfrac{f(x)g(x+h)-f(x)g(x)}{h}}{g(x+h)g(x)} && \text{Seperating the fractions}\\
&= \frac{\left[\lim\limits_{h\to 0}\dfrac{f(x+h)g(x)-f(x)g(x)}{h}\right]-\left[\lim\limits_{h\to 0}\dfrac{f(x)g(x+h)-f(x)g(x)}{h}\right]}{\lim\limits_{h\to 0}g(x+h)g(x)} && \text{Moving the limit inside.}\\
&= \frac{\left[\lim\limits_{h\to 0}\dfrac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h}\right]g(x)-f(x)\left[\lim\limits_{h\to 0}\dfrac{g(x+h)-g(x)}{h}\right]}{\lim\limits_{h\to 0}g(x+h)g(x)}\\
&= \frac{\dfrac{d}{dx}[f(x)]g(x)-f(x)\dfrac{d}{dx}[g(x)]}{g(x)^2}. && \text{Take the limit and simplify the denominator}
\end{aligned}$$

■

Exercise 2.2.4.
Provide an alternate proof of the quotient rule using the product rule.

Hint: If $h(x)=\dfrac{f(x)}{g(x)}$, then we may write $h(x)g(x)=f(x)$.

Solution.
Since $h(x)g(x)=f(x)$, we have

$$\frac{d}{dx}[h(x)g(x)]=\frac{d}{dx}[f(x)].$$

Applying the product rule, we have

$$h'(x)g(x)+h(x)g'(x)=f'(x).$$

Multiply both sides by $g(x)$ to get

$$h'(x)\left(g(x)\right)^2+[h(x)g(x)]g'(x)=f'(x)g(x).$$

So

$$h'(x)\left(g(x)\right)^2+[f(x)]g'(x)=f'(x)g(x).$$

Now solving for $h'(x)$, we have

$$\boxed{h'(x) = \frac{f'(x)g(x) - f(x)g'(x)}{(g(x))^2}}$$

●

§2.2.4 Chain Rule

We will state the chain rule here without proof, as it is fairly more involved than the proofs of the other rules. If you are curious about the proof, check out Theorem 31.1.1.

The Chain Rule If f and g are functions with $f'(x)$ and $g'(f(x))$ both existing, then

$$\boxed{(g \circ f)'(x) = g'(f(x)) \cdot f'(x)}.$$

Example 2.2.1.
Verify the chain rule for the function $h(x) = \left(x^2 + 4\right)^3$.
We can take the derivative of this function first without the chain rule. However, we have to expand it using the binomial theorem.

$$\begin{aligned}
\left(x^2 + 4\right)^3 &= \sum_{j=0}^{3} \binom{3}{j} \left(x^2\right)^{3-j} \cdot 4^j \\
&= \binom{3}{0}(x^2)^3 \cdot 4^0 + \binom{3}{1}(x^2)^2 \cdot 4^1 + \binom{3}{2}(x^2)^1 \cdot 4^2 + \binom{3}{3}(x^2)^0 \cdot 4^3 \\
&= x^6 + 12x^4 + 48x^2 + 64
\end{aligned}$$

Taking the derivative we get

$$h'(x) = 6x^5 + 48x^3 + 96x.$$

If we instead consider $h(x) = g\left(f(x)\right)$, where $g(x) = x^3$ and $f(x) = x^2 + 4$, then the chain rule tells us

$$\begin{aligned}
h'(x) &= g'(f(x)) \cdot f'(x) \\
&= 3\left(x^2 + 4\right)^2 \cdot 2x \\
&= 6x\left(x^2 + 4\right)^2
\end{aligned}$$

Notice how much simpler the chain rule approach is, we didn't need to expand a cubic!
Let's verify that both expressions are equivalent by expanding the chain rule result:

$$\begin{aligned}
6x\left(x^2 + 4\right)^2 &= 6x\left(x^4 + 8x^2 + 16\right) \\
&= 6x^5 + 48x^3 + 96x
\end{aligned}$$

Indeed, both methods give the same answer.

§2.2.5 Derivatives of Trigonometric Functions

Theorem 2.2.4.

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[\sin(x)\right] = \cos(x).$$

Proof.

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[\sin(x)] &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\sin(x+h)-\sin(x)}{h}\\ &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\sin(x)\cos(h)+\cos(x)\sin(h)-\sin(x)}{h}\\ &= \lim_{h\to 0}\left[\cos(x)\cdot\frac{\sin(h)}{h}+\sin(x)\cdot\frac{\cos(h)-1}{h}\right]\end{aligned}$$

Now we apply known trigonometric limits:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[\sin(x)] &= \cos(x)\cdot\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\sin(h)}{h}+\sin(x)\cdot\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\cos(h)-1}{h}\\ &= \cos(x)\cdot 1+\sin(x)\cdot 0 \qquad \boxed{\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\sin(h)}{h}=1,\ \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\cos(h)-1}{h}=0}\\ &= \cos(x)\end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[\sin(x)] = \cos(x).$$

■

Theorem 2.2.5.

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[\cos(x)] = -\sin(x).$$

Proof.

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[\cos(x)] &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\cos(x+h)-\cos(x)}{h}\\ &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\cos(x)\cos(h)-\sin(x)\sin(h)-\cos(x)}{h}\\ &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\cos(x)\cos(h)-\cos(x)}{h}-\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\sin(x)\sin(h)}{h}\\ &= \cos(x)\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\cos(h)-1}{h}-\sin(x)\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\sin(h)}{h}\\ &= \cos(x)\cdot 0-\sin(x)\cdot 1\end{aligned}$$

so

$$\boxed{\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[\cos(x)] = -\sin(x).}$$

■

Theorem 2.2.6.

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[\tan(x)] = \sec^2(x).$$

Proof.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{dx}[\tan(x)] &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\tan(x+h)-\tan(x)}{h}\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\frac{\tan(x)+\tan(h)}{1-\tan(x)\tan(h)}-\tan(x)}{h}\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\frac{\tan(x)+\tan(h)}{1-\tan(x)\tan(h)}-\frac{\tan(x)(1-\tan(x)\tan(h))}{1-\tan(x)\tan(h)}}{h}\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\tan(x)+\tan(h)-\tan(x)+\tan^2(x)\tan(h)}{h(1-\tan(x)\tan(h))}\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\tan(h)+\tan^2(x)\tan(h)}{h(1-\tan(x)\tan(h))}\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\tan(h)\left(1+\tan^2(x)\right)}{h(1-\tan(x)\tan(h))}\\
&= \left(1+\tan^2(x)\right)\cdot\left(\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\tan(h)}{h}\right)\cdot\left(\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{1}{1-\tan(x)\tan(h)}\right)\\
&= \left(1+\tan^2(x)\right)\cdot 1\cdot 1\\
&= \sec^2(x)
\end{aligned}$$

so

$$\boxed{\frac{d}{dx}[\tan(x)] = \sec^2(x)\,.}$$

■

Exercise 2.2.5.
Use the quotient rule to find an easier way to take the derivative of $\tan(x)$.

Solution.
We write $\tan(x) = \dfrac{\sin(x)}{\cos(x)}$. Then,

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{dx}[\tan(x)] &= \frac{d}{dx}\left[\frac{\sin(x)}{\cos(x)}\right]\\
&= \frac{\frac{d}{dx}[\sin(x)]\cos(x)-\frac{d}{dx}[\cos(x)]\sin(x)}{\cos^2(x)}\\
&= \frac{\cos^2(x)+\sin^2(x)}{\cos^2(x)}
\end{aligned}$$

So

$$\boxed{\frac{d}{dx}[\tan(x)] = \sec^2(x)\,.}$$

●

Exercise 2.2.6.
Use the product rule and the fact that

$$\tan(x)\cos(x) = \sin(x)$$

to show that $\dfrac{d}{dx}[\tan(x)] = \sec^2(x)$.

Solution.

We have

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[\tan(x)\cos(x)\right] &= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[\sin(x)\right] \\
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[\tan(x)\right]\cos(x) + \tan(x)\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[\cos(x)\right] &= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[\sin(x)\right] \\
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[\tan(x)\right]\cos(x) - \tan(x)\sin(x) &= \cos(x) \\
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[\tan(x)\right] - \tan^2(x) &= 1 \\
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[\tan(x)\right] &= 1 + \tan^2(x)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[\tan(x)\right] = \sec^2(x).}$$

●

Theorem 2.2.7.

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[\sec(x)\right] = \sec(x)\tan(x).$$

Proof.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[\sec(x)\right] &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\sec(x+h) - \sec(x)}{h} \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\dfrac{1}{\cos(x+h)} - \dfrac{1}{\cos(x)}}{h} \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{1}{h}\cdot\frac{\cos(x) - \cos(x+h)}{\cos(x)\cos(x+h)} \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\cos(x) - \cos(x+h)}{h}\cdot\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{1}{\cos(x)\cos(x+h)} \\
&= \left(-\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[\cos(x)\right]\right)\cdot\left(\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{1}{\cos(x)\cos(x+h)}\right) \\
&= \sin(x)\sec^2(x)
\end{aligned}$$

or

$$\boxed{\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[\sec(x)\right] = \sec(x)\tan(x)}$$

■

Exercise 2.2.7.
Prove that $\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[\sec(x)\right] = \sec(x)\tan(x)$ *the long way*. (Don't use prior knowledge of the derivative of cosine.)

Solution.
The first part of this proof starts off in the same way as above.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[\sec(x)\right] &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\sec(x+h) - \sec(x)}{h} \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\dfrac{1}{\cos(x+h)} - \dfrac{1}{\cos(x)}}{h} \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{1}{h}\cdot\frac{\cos(x) - \cos(x+h)}{\cos(x)\cos(x+h)}
\end{aligned}$$

Here is where the steps diverge.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{dx}[\sec(x)] &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{1}{h}\cdot\frac{\cos(x)-\cos(x)\cos(h)+\sin(x)\sin(h)}{\cos(x)\cos(x+h)} \\
&= \left[\lim_{h\to 0}\left(\frac{1-\cos(h)}{h}\right)\left(\frac{\cos(x)}{\cos(x)\cos(x+h)}\right)\right]+\left[\lim_{h\to 0}\left(\frac{\sin(h)}{h}\right)\left(\frac{\sin(x)}{\cos(x)\cos(x+h)}\right)\right] \\
&= \left(\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{1-\cos(h)}{h}\right)\left(\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\cos(x)}{\cos(x)\cos(x+h)}\right)+\left(\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\sin(h)}{h}\right)\left(\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\sin(x)}{\cos(x)\cos(x+h)}\right) \\
&= 0\cdot\sec(x)+1\cdot\sec(x)\tan(x)
\end{aligned}$$

So

$$\boxed{\frac{d}{dx}[\sec(x)] = \sec(x)\tan(x)}$$

●

§2.2.6 Derivatives of Logarithmic and Exponential Functions

Theorem 2.2.8.

$$\frac{d}{dx}[\log_a(x)] = \frac{1}{\ln(a)x}$$

Proof.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{dx}[\log_a(x)] &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\log_a(x+h)-\log_a(x)}{h} \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{1}{h}\log_a\left(\frac{x+h}{x}\right) \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\log_a\left(\left(1+\frac{h}{x}\right)^{\frac{1}{h}}\right)
\end{aligned}$$

We now handle the right-hand limit. Let $t=\frac{1}{h}$, so that $h\to 0^+$ corresponds to $t\to\infty$. Then:

$$\begin{aligned}
\lim_{h\to 0^+}\log_a\left(\left(1+\frac{h}{x}\right)^{\frac{1}{h}}\right) &= \lim_{t\to\infty}\log_a\left(\left(1+\frac{1}{xt}\right)^{t}\right) \\
&= \log_a\left(\lim_{t\to\infty}\left(1+\frac{\frac{1}{x}}{t}\right)^{t}\right) \\
&= \log_a\left(e^{\frac{1}{x}}\right) && \text{Definition of } e\text{: } \lim_{n\to\infty}\left(1+\frac{a}{n}\right)^n = e^a \\
&= \frac{1}{x}\log_a(e) \\
&= \frac{1}{x}\cdot\frac{\ln(e)}{\ln(a)} \\
&= \frac{1}{\ln(a)x}
\end{aligned}$$

The left-hand limit as $h\to 0^-$ proceeds similarly and yields the same result. (Hint: Negatives conspire to cancel.) Hence, the derivative exists and is given by:

$$\frac{d}{dx}[\log_a(x)] = \frac{1}{\ln(a)x}.$$

■

Theorem 2.2.9.

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[a^x\right] = \ln(a) \cdot a^x.$$

Proof.
We have

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{dx}\left[a^x\right] &= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{a^{x+h} - a^x}{h} \\
&= a^x \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{a^h - 1}{h} \\
&= a^x \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{e^{h\ln(a)} - 1}{h} \\
&= a^x \lim_{k \to 0} \frac{e^k - 1}{k} \cdot \ln(a) && \text{Setting } k = h\ln(a). \\
&= \ln(a) \cdot a^x \lim_{k \to 0} \frac{e^k - 1}{k} \\
&= \ln(a) \cdot a^x \cdot 1
\end{aligned}$$

So

$$\boxed{\frac{d}{dx}\left[a^x\right] = \ln(a) \cdot a^x.}$$

■

§2.3 Implicit Differentiation

Sometimes, we are not so lucky to be given y as an explicit function of x, we are give some relation between x and y. But we still want to measure how y changes with respect to a change in x. Implicit differentiation allows us to do this.

If we want to find the rate of change of the expression with respect to x, $f(y)$, we can think of this as $f(y(x))$ and then apply the chain rule to get

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[f(y(x))\right] = f'(y(x))y'(x).$$

Example 2.3.1.
Suppose that $x^2 + y^2 = 1$, the unit circle. Find $\frac{dy}{dx}$.
Applying the derivate operator to both sides

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{dx}\left[x^2 + y^2\right] &= \frac{d}{dx}[1] \\
2x + 2y\frac{dy}{dx} &= 0 \\
\frac{dy}{dx} &= -\frac{x}{y}
\end{aligned}$$

Let us find $\frac{dy}{dx}$ another way.
Solving for y as an explicit function of x, we have two functions:

$$y = \pm\sqrt{1 - x^2} = \pm\left(1 - x^2\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

Taking the derivative, we have

$$\begin{aligned} y' &= \pm\frac{1}{2}\left(1 - x^2\right)^{\frac{1}{2}-1}(-2x) \\ &= \mp\frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} \\ &= -\frac{x}{y} \end{aligned}$$

Example 2.3.2.

Find $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}$ for $x^2 + y^2 = 1$.

Let us use the expression we found earlier that $2x + 2y\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$ or $x + y\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$. We can apply the derivative operator to get

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dx}\left[x + y\frac{dy}{dx}\right] &= \frac{d}{dx}[0] \\ 1 + \frac{dy}{dx}^2 + y\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} &= 0 && \text{(Applying the product rule.)} \\ \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} &= \frac{-1-\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2}{y} \\ \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} &= \frac{-1-\left(-\frac{x}{y}\right)^2}{y} \\ \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} &= \frac{-y^2-x^2}{y^3} \\ \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} &= -\frac{y^2+x^2}{y^3} \end{aligned}$$

This is much easier than taking the derivative the other way

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[y'\right] = \frac{d}{dx}\left[\mp\frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\right]$$

§2.4 Inverse Functions

Recall that an inverse function for $f(x)$ is a function $f^{-1}(x)$ with the property that

$$f(f^{-1}(x)) = x \quad \text{and} \quad f^{-1}(f(x)) = x$$

for all x in the appropriate domains.
This lets us derive information about an inverse function's derivative given information about the derivative of the original function.

Theorem 2.4.1.
Suppose that f is an invertible function with inverse g, that f is differentiable at $g(a)$, and that $f'(g(a)) \neq 0$. Then g is differentiable at a and

$$g'(a) = \frac{1}{f'(g(a))}.$$

Proof.

We apply the chain rule to the identity $f(g(x)) = x$.

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[f(g(x))\right] &= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left[x\right] \\ f'(g(x)) \cdot g'(x) &= 1 \\ g'(x) &= \frac{1}{f'(g(x))} \end{aligned}$$

The result is achieved by setting $x = a$. ∎

3 Applications of the Derivative

§3.1 Maximum and Minimum

Example 3.1.1.
Find the maximum and minimum of the function

$$f(\theta) = \cos^2\theta + 2\sin^2\theta$$

over the interval $[0, 2\pi]$.

First note that

$$f(\theta) = \cos^2\theta + 2\sin^2\theta = (\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta) + \sin^2\theta = 1 + \sin^2\theta.$$

Differentiating,

$$f'(\theta) = 2\sin\theta\cos\theta = \sin(2\theta).$$

Setting $f'(\theta) = 0$ gives

$$\sin(2\theta) = 0 \quad\Longrightarrow\quad 2\theta = k\pi \quad (k \in \mathbb{Z}),$$

so the critical points in $[0, 2\pi]$ are

$$\theta = 0,\ \tfrac{\pi}{2},\ \pi,\ \tfrac{3\pi}{2},\ 2\pi.$$

We test one point in each sub-interval determined by the critical points.

Interval	Test point θ	$\sin(2\theta)$	Monotonicity of f
$\left(0, \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$	$\frac{\pi}{4}$	$\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = +1$	increasing
$\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, \pi\right)$	$\frac{3\pi}{4}$	$\sin\left(\frac{3\pi}{2}\right) = -1$	decreasing
$\left(\pi, \frac{3\pi}{2}\right)$	$\frac{5\pi}{4}$	$\sin\left(\frac{5\pi}{2}\right) = +1$	increasing
$\left(\frac{3\pi}{2}, 2\pi\right)$	$\frac{7\pi}{4}$	$\sin\left(\frac{7\pi}{2}\right) = -1$	decreasing

From this sign chart: f increases on $(0, \frac{\pi}{2})$, decreases on $(\frac{\pi}{2}, \pi)$, increases on $(\pi, \frac{3\pi}{2})$, and decreases on $(\frac{3\pi}{2}, 2\pi)$. Hence $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\theta = \frac{3\pi}{2}$ are local maxima, while $\theta = 0, \pi, 2\pi$ are local minima.

Testing each candidate θ value, we get:

$$f(0) = 1 + \sin^2 0 = 1, \qquad f\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2}\right) = 1 + \sin^2\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2}\right) = 2,$$

$$f(\pi) = 1 + \sin^2\pi = 1, \qquad f\left(\tfrac{3\pi}{2}\right) = 1 + \sin^2\left(\tfrac{3\pi}{2}\right) = 2,$$

$$f(2\pi) = 1 + \sin^2(2\pi) = 1.$$

So, on $[0, 2\pi]$,

$$\boxed{\text{Maximum value 2 attained at } \theta = \tfrac{\pi}{2},\ \tfrac{3\pi}{2},} \qquad \boxed{\text{Minimum value 1 attained at } \theta = 0,\ \pi,\ 2\pi.}$$

4 Integrals

We now begin the second question calculus was intended to solve, how do we find the area underneath the graph of a function.

§4.1 Approximations

§4.1.1 Riemann Sums

Left and Right Riemann Sums

The idea behind a Riemann sum is very simple: we approximate the area underneath a function using rectangles.

Setting Up the Problem: Suppose we want to find the area under a continuous function $f(x)$ between $x = a$ and $x = b$. The first step is to divide this interval into n equal pieces.

Width of each rectangle: Since we're dividing the interval $[a, b]$ into n equal pieces, each piece has width

$$\Delta x = \frac{b-a}{n}$$

The subintervals: This divides $[a, b]$ into the subintervals

$$[a, a+\Delta x], \quad [a+\Delta x, a+2\Delta x], \quad [a+2\Delta x, a+3\Delta x], \quad \ldots, \quad [a+(n-1)\Delta x, b]$$

Notice that the left endpoints of these subintervals are $a, a+\Delta x, a+2\Delta x, \ldots, a+(n-1)\Delta x$, which we can write as $a + k\Delta x$ for $k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, n-1$.

Left Riemann Sum: To form rectangles, we need both a width and a height. We already have the width (Δx). For the height, we use the function value at the **left endpoint** of each subinterval.

For the k-th rectangle (where k goes from 0 to $n-1$):

- **Width:** Δx
- **Height:** $f(a + k\Delta x)$
- **Area:** $f(a + k\Delta x) \cdot \Delta x$

Adding up all n rectangles, the total approximate area is

$$\text{Area}(f) \approx \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} f(a + k\Delta x) \cdot \Delta x$$

where $\Delta x = \dfrac{b-a}{n}$.

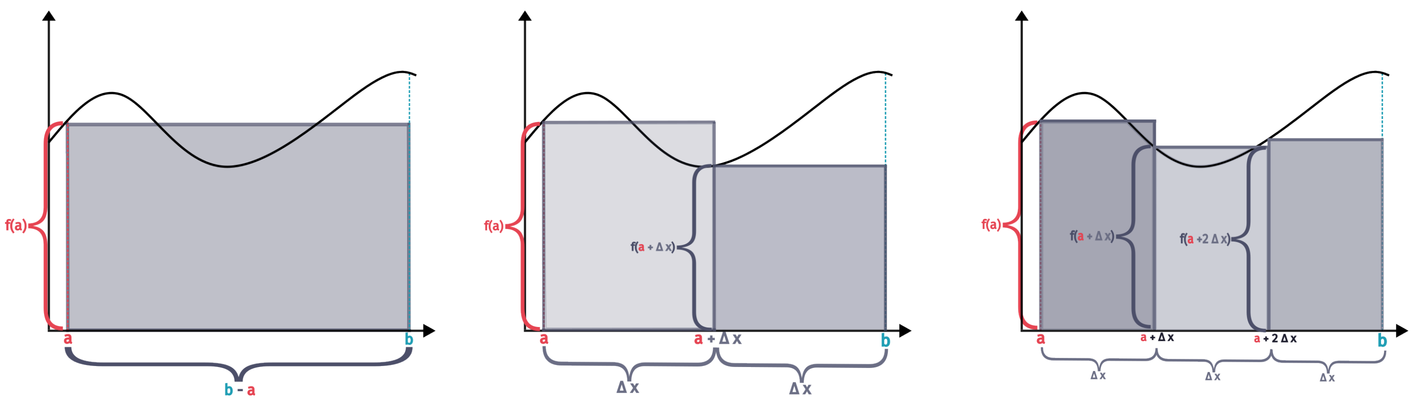


Figure 4.1: Left Riemann Sum with n subdivisions. Each rectangle has width $\Delta x = \dfrac{b-a}{n}$ and height $f(a+k\Delta x)$ for $k = 0, 1, \ldots, n-1$.

5 Integration Techniques

§5.1 Integration by Parts

Much like how substitution is the inverse of the chain rule, we have an inverse of the product rule.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{dx}[f(x)g(x)] &= f'(x)g(x) + f(x)g'(x) \\
\frac{d}{dx}[f(x)g(x)] - f(x)g'(x) &= f'(x)g(x) \\
\int \frac{d}{dx}[f(x)g(x)]\,dx - \int f(x)g'(x)\,dx &= \int f'(x)g(x)\,dx
\end{aligned}$$

This gives us

$$\int f'(x)g(x)\,dx = f(x)g(x) - \int f(x)g'(x)\,dx \tag{5.1.1}$$

We will often use a more compact version of Equation (5.1.1)

$$\int u\,dv = uv - \int v\,du \tag{5.1.2}$$

This is the **integration by parts** formula.

Example 5.1.1.
Find $\int x\sin(x)\,dx$.
Using Equation (5.1.2), we set $u = x$, $dv = \sin(x)\,dx$,so $v = -\cos(x)$ and $du = dx$. This gives us

$$\begin{aligned}
\int x\sin(x)\,dx &= -x\cos(x) - \int -\cos(x)\,dx \\
&= \sin(x) - x\cos(x) + C
\end{aligned}$$

Example 5.1.2.
Find $\int \ln(x)\,dx$.

Setting $u = \ln(x)$ and $dv = 1\,dx$, we get $du = \frac{1}{x}\,dx$ and $v = x$ so

$$\begin{aligned}
\int \ln(x)\,dx &= x\ln(x) - \int 1\,dx \\
&= x\ln(x) - x + C
\end{aligned}$$

Example 5.1.3.
Find $\int x^2e^x\,dx$.
Set $u = x^2$ so $du = 2x\,dx$. This gives us $dv = e^x\,dx$ and $v = e^x$.

$$\int x^2e^x\,dx = x^2e^x - \int xe^x\,dx\,.$$

$\int xe^x\,dx$ needs to be tackled again through integration by parts. So we reassign $u = x$, $du = dx$, $dv = e^x\,dx$, $v = e^x$ so

$$\begin{aligned}\int xe^x\,dx &= xe^x - \int e^x\,dx\\ &= xe^x - e^x + C.\end{aligned}$$

Substitution into our earlier expression, we get

$$\begin{aligned}\int x^2e^x\,dx &= x^2e^x - \int xe^x\,dx\\ &= x^2e^x - \left(xe^x - e^x\right) + C\\ &= x^2e^x - xe^x + e^x + C\end{aligned}$$

Example 5.1.4.
Find $\int \sin(x)e^x\,dx$.

For reasons that will become clear, let us set $I = \int \sin(x)e^x\,dx$. We also set $u = \sin(x)$, $du = -\cos(x)\,dx$, $dv = e^x\,dx$, $v = e^x$. This gives us

$$\begin{aligned}I &= \sin(x)e^x - \int -\cos(x)e^x\,dx\\ &= \sin(x)e^x + \int \cos(x)e^x\,dx\\ &= \sin(x)e^x + J\end{aligned}$$

where $J = \int \cos(x)e^x\,dx$ and similarly let $u = \cos(x)\,du = \sin(x)\,dx$, $dv = e^x\,dx$, $v = e^x$. We get

$$\begin{aligned}J &= \cos(x)e^x - \int \sin(x)e^x\,dx\\ J &= \cos(x)e^x - I\end{aligned}$$

Now substituting the expression for J into the expression for I, we get

$$\begin{aligned}I &= \sin(x)e^x + \cos(x)e^x - I\\ 2I &= \sin(x)e^x + \cos(x)e^x\end{aligned}$$

Dividing by 2 gives us the final answer

$$\boxed{\int \sin(x)e^x\,dx = \frac{\sin(x)e^x + \cos(x)e^x}{2} + C}$$

The integration by parts theorem also works for definite integrals.

Example 5.1.5.
Evaluate $\int_0^1 \tan^{-1}(x)\,dx$.

Let $u = \tan^{-1}(x)$, $du = \frac{1}{1+x^2}\,dx$, $dv = dx\,.v = x$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_0^1 \tan^{-1}(x)\,dx &= x\tan^{-1}(x)\Big|_0^1 - \int_0^1 \frac{x}{1+x^2}\,dx \\
&= 1\tan^{-1}(1) - 0\tan^{-1}(0) - \int_0^1 \frac{x}{1+x^2}\,dx \\
&= \frac{\pi}{4} - \int_0^1 \frac{x}{1+x^2}\,dx
\end{aligned}$$

We can use u-substitution for our new integral with $u = 1 + x^2$, $du = 2x\,dx$

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_0^1 \frac{x}{1+x^2}\,dx &= \frac{1}{2}\int_1^2 \frac{1}{u}\,du \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\ln(u)\Big|_1^2 \\
&= \frac{1}{2}(\ln(2) - \ln(1)) \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\ln(2) \\
&= \ln\left(\sqrt{2}\right)
\end{aligned}$$

So finally, we have

$$\boxed{\int_0^1 \tan^{-1}(x)\,dx = \frac{\pi}{4} - \ln\left(\sqrt{2}\right)}$$

Lemma 5.1.1.
For all $n \geq 2$,

$$\int \sin^n(x)\,dx == \frac{n-1}{n}\int \sin^{n-2}(x)\,dx - \frac{1}{n}\sin^{n-1}(x)\cos(x).$$

This is known as the **reduction formula.**

Proof.
We can rewrite $\int \sin^n(x)\,dx$ as $\int \sin^{n-1}(x)\sin(x)\,dx$ so we can do

$$\begin{aligned}
u &= \sin^{n-1}(x), \quad & du &= (n-1)\sin^{n-2}(x)\cos(x)\,dx \\
v &= -\cos(x), \quad & dv &= \sin(x)\,dx
\end{aligned}$$

So

$$\begin{aligned}
\int \sin^n(x)\,dx &= -\sin^{n-1}(x)\cos(x) - \int -\cos(x)(n-1)\sin^{n-2}(x)\cos(x)\,dx \\
&= -\sin^{n-1}(x)\cos(x) + (n-1)\int \sin^{n-2}(x)\cos^2(x)\,dx \\
&= -\sin^{n-1}(x)\cos(x) + (n-1)\int \sin^{n-2}(x)\left(1-\sin^2(x)\right)dx \\
&= -\sin^{n-1}(x)\cos(x) + (n-1)\int \sin^{n-2}(x) - \sin^n(x)\,dx \\
\int \sin^n(x)\,dx &= -\sin^{n-1}(x)\cos(x) + (n-1)\int \sin^{n-2}(x)\,dx - (n-1)\int \sin^n(x)\,dx \\
n\int \sin^n(x)\,dx &= -\sin^{n-1}(x)\cos(x) + (n-1)\int \sin^{n-2}(x)\,dx
\end{aligned}$$

which gives us the desired formula

$$\boxed{\int \sin^n(x)\,dx = \frac{n-1}{n}\int \sin^{n-2}(x)\,dx - \frac{1}{n}\sin^{n-1}(x)\cos(x)}$$

■

Exercise 5.1.1.
Evaluate $\displaystyle\int xe^{2x}\,dx$

Solution.
Set

$$\begin{aligned} u &= x, & du &= dx \\ v &= \frac{1}{2}e^{2x}, & dv &= e^{2x}\,dx \end{aligned}$$

So

$$\begin{aligned} \int xe^{2x}\,dx &= \frac{1}{2}xe^{2x} - \int \frac{1}{2}e^{2x}\,dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2}xe^{2x} - \frac{1}{4}e^{2x} + C \end{aligned}$$

●

Exercise 5.1.2.
Evaluate $\displaystyle\int \sqrt{x}\ln(x)\,dx$.

Solution.
Set

$$\begin{aligned} u &= \ln(x), & du &= \frac{1}{x}\,dx \\ v &= \frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}}, & dv &= x^{\frac{1}{2}}\,dx \end{aligned}$$

This gives us

$$\begin{aligned} \int \sqrt{x}\ln(x)\,dx &= \frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}}\ln(x) - \int \frac{x^{\frac{1}{2}}}{x}\,dx \\ &= \frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}}\ln(x) - \int x^{-\frac{1}{2}}\,dx \\ &\frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}}\ln(x) - 2x^{\frac{1}{2}} + C \end{aligned}$$

So

$$\boxed{\int \sqrt{x}\ln(x)\,dx = \frac{2}{3}\sqrt{x^3}\ln(x) - 2\sqrt{x} + C.}$$

●

Exercise 5.1.3.
Find $\displaystyle\int x\cos(4x)\,dx$

Solution.

Set

$$u = x, \quad du = dx$$
$$v = \frac{1}{4}\sin(4x), \quad dv = \cos(4x)\,dx$$

$$\int x\cos(4x)\,dx = \frac{1}{4}x\sin(4x) - \int \frac{1}{4}\sin(4x)\,dx$$
$$= \frac{1}{4}x\sin(4x) + \frac{1}{16}\cos(4x) + C$$

So

$$\boxed{\int x\cos(4x)\,dx = \frac{1}{4}x\sin(4x) + \frac{1}{16}\cos(4x) + C}$$

●

Exercise 5.1.4.
Evaluate

$$\int \frac{x}{1-x}\,dx$$

Solution.
Set

$$u = x, \quad du = dx$$
$$v = -\ln(1-x) \quad dv = \frac{1}{1-x}\,dx$$

So

$$\int \frac{x}{1-x}\,dx = -x\ln(1-x) + \int \ln(1-x)\,dx$$

Making a substitution into our second integral of $t = 1 - x \Rightarrow -dt = dx$ so

$$\int \ln(1-x)\,dx - \int \ln(t)\,dt$$
$$= -t\ln(t) + t + C$$
$$= -(1-x)\ln(1-x) + (1-x) + C$$
$$= x\ln(1-x) - \ln(1-x) - x + C \qquad \text{(Since } C \text{ is an arbitrary constant, we will absorb the 1 here.)}$$

Substituting into our earlier expression, we have the final answer of

$$\boxed{\int \frac{x}{1-x}\,dx = -\ln(1-x) - x + C}$$

●

§5.2 Weierstrass Substitution

Although this substitution technique is not typically introduced in standard calculus courses, it is remarkably elegant and powerful for integrating rational functions of trigonometric expressions.

The main idea is to re-parameterize the unit circle using the half-angle tangent. We begin with the substitution

$$u = \tan\left(\frac{x}{2}\right). \tag{5.2.1}$$

From this substitution, we can find the differential:

$$\begin{aligned} du &= d\left(\tan\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)\right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\sec^2\left(\frac{x}{2}\right) dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\left(1+\tan^2\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)\right) dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\left(1+u^2\right) dx\,. \end{aligned}$$

Solving for dx:

$$\boxed{dx = \frac{2}{1+u^2}\,du}. \tag{5.2.2}$$

Now we derive the substitution formulas for the main trigonometric functions.
Using the double angle formula for tangent:

$$\begin{aligned} \tan(x) &= \tan\left(2\cdot\frac{x}{2}\right) \\ &= \frac{2\tan\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)}{1-\tan^2\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)} \\ &= \frac{2u}{1-u^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore:

$$\boxed{\tan(x) = \frac{2u}{1-u^2}}. \tag{5.2.3}$$

To derive the substitutions for sine and cosine, we interpret $u = \tan\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$ geometrically. Consider a right triangle with angle $\frac{x}{2}$, where the opposite side has length u and the adjacent side has length 1. By the Pythagorean theorem, the hypotenuse has length $\sqrt{1+u^2}$.
This gives us:

$$\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right) = \frac{u}{\sqrt{1+u^2}}, \quad \cos\left(\frac{x}{2}\right) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+u^2}}.$$

Using the double angle formula for sine:

$$\begin{aligned} \sin(x) &= \sin\left(2\cdot\frac{x}{2}\right) \\ &= 2\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)\cos\left(\frac{x}{2}\right) \\ &= 2\cdot\frac{u}{\sqrt{1+u^2}}\cdot\frac{1}{\sqrt{1+u^2}} \\ &= \frac{2u}{1+u^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore:

$$\boxed{\sin(x) = \frac{2u}{1+u^2}}. \tag{5.2.4}$$

Using the double angle formula for cosine:

$$\begin{aligned} \cos(x) &= \cos\left(2\cdot\frac{x}{2}\right) \\ &= \cos^2\left(\frac{x}{2}\right) - \sin^2\left(\frac{x}{2}\right) \\ &= \frac{1}{1+u^2} - \frac{u^2}{1+u^2} \\ &= \frac{1-u^2}{1+u^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore:

$$\boxed{\cos(x) = \frac{1-u^2}{1+u^2}}. \tag{5.2.5}$$

The Weierstrass substitution $u = \tan\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$ transforms any trigonometric rational function into an algebraic rational function, which can then be integrated using partial fractions or other algebraic techniques.

Example 5.2.1.

Find $\int \sec(x)\, dx$.

We have

$$\int \frac{1}{\cos(x)}\, dx.$$

Applying Equations (5.2.2) and (5.2.5), we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\int \sec(x)\, dx &= \int \frac{1+u^2}{1-u^2} \cdot \frac{2}{1+u^2}\, du \\
&= \int \frac{2}{1-u^2}\, du \\
&= \int \left(\frac{1}{1+u} + \frac{1}{1-u}\right) du \\
&= \ln|1+u| - \ln|1-u| + C \\
&= \ln\left|\frac{1+u}{1-u}\right| + C
\end{aligned}$$

It is tempting to substitute $u = \tan\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$ and it would still be correct, but we can arrive at the standard answer with some patience:

$$\begin{aligned}
\ln\left|\frac{1+u}{1-u}\right| &= \ln\left|\frac{1+u}{1-u} \cdot \frac{1+u}{1+u}\right| \\
&= \ln\left|\frac{(1+u)^2}{1-u^2}\right| \\
&= \ln\left|\frac{1+2u+u^2}{1-u^2}\right| \\
&= \ln\left|\frac{1+u^2}{1-u^2} + \frac{2u}{1-u^2}\right| \\
&= \ln|\sec(x) + \tan(x)|
\end{aligned}$$

So

$$\boxed{\int \sec(x)\, dx = \ln|\sec(x) + \tan(x)| + C.}$$

6 Applications of the Integral

§6.1 Volumes

Integrals are not only useful for computing areas; they also allow us to calculate volumes. Suppose that for each value of x, we are given a cross-sectional area $A(x)$. By approximating the solid as a stack of thin slices of thickness dx, the total volume is obtained in the limit as

$$V = \int_a^b A(x)\, dx\,.$$

§6.2 Volumes of Solids of Revolution and Cylindrical Shells

Suppose we wish to calculate the volume of a solid obtained by rotating the graph of a function $f(x) \geq 0$ about the x-axis for x between a and b. We think of slicing the solid perpendicular to the x-axis. At position x, the cross-section is a circle of radius $f(x)$, so its area is

$$A(x) = \pi\big(f(x)\big)^2.$$

The volume is then obtained by integrating these cross-sectional areas:

$$\boxed{V = \int_a^b A(x)\, dx = \pi \int_a^b \big(f(x)\big)^2\, dx\,.}$$

Now suppose we want to find the volume of the solid formed by rotating the region bounded by two functions $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ about the x-axis. Suppose that $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ intersect at $x = a$ and $x = b$, and that $f(x) \geq g(x)$ on the interval $[a, b]$.

When we take a vertical cross-section at any point x in $[a, b]$ and rotate it about the x-axis, we obtain a **washer** (a disk with a hole in the middle). The outer radius of this washer is $f(x)$, and the inner radius is $g(x)$.

The area of a washer is the area of the outer circle minus the area of the inner circle:

$$\text{Area of washer} = \pi R^2 - \pi r^2 = \pi(R^2 - r^2)$$

In our case, this gives us:

$$\text{Area of cross-section} = \pi[f(x)]^2 - \pi[g(x)]^2 = \pi\left([f(x)]^2 - [g(x)]^2\right)$$

To find the total volume, we integrate these cross-sectional areas from $x = a$ to $x = b$:

$$\boxed{V = \int_a^b \pi\left([f(x)]^2 - [g(x)]^2\right) dx = \pi \int_a^b \left([f(x)]^2 - [g(x)]^2\right) dx}$$

Exercise 6.2.1.
Use the washer method to find the volume of the region above the curve $y = x^3$ and below $y = 1$ between $x = 0$ and $x = 1$ about the x-axis.

Solution.
We have

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \pi \int_0^1 1^2 - \left(x^3\right)^2 dx \\ &= \pi \int_0^1 1 - x^6\, dx \\ &= \pi\left(x - \frac{x^7}{7}\right)\Bigg|_0^1 \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{V = \frac{6\pi}{7}}$$

Exercise 6.2.2.
Calculate the same volume as above using cylindrical shells.

Solution.
We calculate the inverse function of $y = x^3$ to get $y = x^{\frac{1}{3}}$. Then using the cylindrical shells formula, we get

$$\begin{aligned} V &= 2\pi \int_0^1 x \cdot x^{\frac{1}{3}} \, \mathrm{d}x \\ &= 2\pi \int_0^1 x^{\frac{4}{3}} \, \mathrm{d}x \\ &= 2\pi \cdot \frac{3}{7} \cdot x^{\frac{7}{3}} \Big|_0^1 \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{V = \frac{6\pi}{7}}$$

Exercise 6.2.3.
Now rotate the same region but about the y-axis using cylindrical shells.

Solution.
Our "height" is $1 - x^3$. So we have

$$\begin{aligned} V &= 2\pi \int_0^1 x\left(1 - x^3\right) \mathrm{d}x \\ &= 2\pi \int_0^1 x - x^4 \, \mathrm{d}x \\ &= 2\pi \left(\frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{x^5}{5} \Big|_0^1 \right) \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{V = \frac{3\pi}{5}}$$

Exercise 6.2.4.
Calculate the same volume as above but using the washer method.

Solution.

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \pi \int_0^1 \left(x^{\frac{1}{3}}\right)^2 \mathrm{d}x \\ &= \pi \int_0^1 x^{\frac{2}{3}} \, \mathrm{d}x \\ &= \pi \cdot \frac{3}{5} \cdot x^{\frac{5}{3}} \Big|_0^1 \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{V = \frac{3\pi}{5}}$$

Exercise 6.2.5.

Let R be the region above the x-axis, below the graph of $y = 1 - \frac{1}{x}$ and to the right of $x = 3$. Find the volume of R rotated about the x-axis by the disk method.

Solution.
We have

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \pi \int_1^3 \left(1 - \frac{1}{x}\right)^2 \mathrm{d}x \\ &= \pi \int_1^3 1 - \frac{2}{x} + \frac{1}{x^2} \mathrm{d}x \\ &= \pi \left(x - 2\ln(x) - \frac{1}{x}\right)\Big|_1^3 \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{V = \left(\frac{8}{3} - \ln(9)\right)\pi}$$

●

Exercise 6.2.6.
Find the same volume as above but with cylindrical shells.

Solution.
With shells, our height is $3 - \frac{1}{1-y}$ so our integral is

$$\begin{aligned} V &= 2\pi \int_0^{\frac{2}{3}} y\left(3 - \frac{1}{1-y}\right) \mathrm{d}y \\ &= 2\pi \int_0^{\frac{2}{3}} 3y - \frac{y}{1-y} \mathrm{d}y \\ &= 2\pi \left(\frac{3}{2}y^2 + \ln(1-y) + y\right)\Big|_0^{\frac{2}{3}} \\ &= 2\pi \left(\frac{2}{3} + \ln\left(\frac{1}{3}\right) + \frac{2}{3}\right) \end{aligned}$$

It can be easily verified that

$$\boxed{V = \left(\frac{8}{3} - \ln(9)\right)\pi}$$

●

7 Parametric and Polar Equations

8 Sequences, Series, and Power Series

§8.1 Convergence Tests

§8.1.1 The Integral Test and the Divergence Test

§8.1.2 Direct Comparison Test

Suppose we are given two positive sequences, a_n and b_n with the property that if $a_n \leq b_n$ for all $n \geq N$ for some $N \in \mathbb{N}$. If $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} b_n$ converges, then $\sum_{k=1}^{n} a_n$ also converges.

Similarly, if we are given two positive sequences, a_n and b_n with the property that if $a_n \geq b_n$ for all $n \geq N$ for some $N \in \mathbb{N}$. If $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} b_n$ diverges, then $\sum_{k=1}^{n} a_n$ also diverges.

§8.1.3 The Limit Comparison Test

Suppose we are given two positive sequences, a_n and b_n such that

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{a_n}{b_n} = L < \infty.$$

Then $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_n$ and $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} b_n$ both converge or both diverge.

§8.1.4 Alternating Series and Absolute Convergence

Definition 8.1.1.
A series is **alternating** if every term is of the form $(-1)^n a_n$ or $(-1)^{n+1} a_n$.

Suppose that $A = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^k a_k$ is an alternating series. If

i) $a_{n+1} \leq a_n$ for all $n \geq N$, $N \in \mathbb{N}$

ii) $\lim_{n\to\infty} a_n = 0$

Then the series converges.

Definition 8.1.2.
A series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k$ is **absolutely convergent** or **converges absolutely** if

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} |a_k| \text{ converges.}$$

Lemma 8.1.1.
If a series converges absolutely, then it converges.

Proof.
Suppose that the series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k$ converges absolutely. Then the series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} |a_k|$ converges. Since $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} -|a_k| = -\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} |a_k|$, it also

converges.

For each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, define the partial sums

$$S_n = \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k \quad \text{and} \quad T_n = \sum_{k=1}^{n} |a_k|.$$

Since $-|a_k| \le a_k \le |a_k|$ for all k, we have

$$-T_n \le S_n \le T_n \quad \text{for all } n.$$

As $T_n \to \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} |a_k|$, it follows that $-T_n \to -\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} |a_k|$. Hence S_n is squeezed between two convergent sequences and therefore converges. Thus $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k$ converges. ∎

Definition 8.1.3.
If a series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges but $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} |a_n|$ does not, we say that it is **conditionally convergent** or **converges conditionally**.

§8.1.5 The Root and Ratio Tests

The Ratio Test

- If

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \left| \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} \right| < 1$$

then the series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges absolutely.

- If

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \left| \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} \right| > 1$$

then the series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_n$ diverges.

- If

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \left| \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} \right| = 1$$

then the ratio test provides no information about the series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_n$.

Exercise 8.1.1.
Determine if

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{n}{5^n}$$

converges or diverges.

Solution.

Let a_n denote the n-th term in the given series. Then applying the ratio test, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{|a_{n+1}|}{a_n} &= \frac{\frac{n+1}{5^{n+1}}}{\frac{n}{5^n}} \\ &= \frac{n+1}{5^{n+1}} \cdot \frac{5^n}{n} \\ &= \frac{n+1}{5^n \cdot 5} \cdot \frac{5^n}{n} \\ &= \frac{n+1}{\cancel{5^n} \cdot 5} \cdot \frac{\cancel{5^n}}{n} \\ &= \frac{1}{5} \cdot \frac{n+1}{n}\end{aligned}$$

Now taking the limit, we have

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{1}{5}\frac{n+1}{n} = \frac{1}{5} < 1$$

so

$$\boxed{\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{n}{5^n} \text{ converges absolutely.}}$$

●

Exercise 8.1.2.
Determine if

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{n-1} \frac{3^n}{2^n n^3}$$

converges or diverges.

Solution.
Let a_n denote the n-th term in the given series. Then applying the ratio test, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{|a_{n+1}|}{|a_n|} &= \frac{\frac{3^{n+1}}{2^{n+1}(n+1)^3}}{\frac{3^n}{2^n n^3}} \\ &= \frac{3^{n+1}}{2^{n+1}(n+1)^3} \cdot \frac{2^n n^3}{3^n} \\ &= \frac{3 \cdot 3^n}{2 \cdot 2^n \, (n+1)^3} \cdot \frac{2^n n^3}{3^n} \\ &= \frac{3 \cdot \cancel{3^n}}{2 \cdot \cancel{2^n} (n+1)^3} \cdot \frac{\cancel{2^n} n^3}{\cancel{3^n}} \\ &= \frac{3}{2} \frac{n^3}{(n+1)^3}\end{aligned}$$

Now taking the limit, we have

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{n^3}{(n+1)^3} = \frac{3}{2} > 1$$

so

$$\boxed{\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{n-1} \frac{3^n}{2^n n^3} \text{ diverges.}}$$

●

Exercise 8.1.3.
Determine if the following series converges or diverges

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\prod_{k=1}^{n} 2k}{n!}.$$

Solution.
Let a_n denote the n-th term in the given series. Then applying the ratio test, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{|a_{n+1}|}{|a_n|} &= \frac{\frac{\prod_{k=1}^{n+1} 2k}{(n+1)!}}{\frac{\prod_{k=1}^{n} 2k}{n!}} \\
&= \frac{\prod_{k=1}^{n+1} 2k}{(n+1)!} \cdot \frac{n!}{\prod_{k=1}^{n} 2k} \\
&= \frac{\left(\prod_{k=1}^{n} 2k\right) \cdot 2(n+1)}{n!\,(n+1)} \cdot \frac{n!}{\prod_{k=1}^{n} 2k} \\
&= \frac{\cancel{\left(\prod_{k=1}^{n} 2k\right)} \cdot 2(n+1)}{\cancel{n!} \cdot (n+1)} \cdot \frac{\cancel{n!}}{\cancel{\prod_{k=1}^{n} 2k}} \\
&= \frac{2(n+1)}{n+1} \\
&= 2
\end{aligned}$$

Taking the limit

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} 2 = 2 > 1$$

so

$$\boxed{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\prod_{k=1}^{n} 2k}{n!} \text{ diverges}.}$$

●

The Root Test

- If

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \sqrt[n]{|a_n|} < 1,$$

then the series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_n$ is absolutely convergent.

- If

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \sqrt[n]{|a_n|} > 1,$$

then the series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_n$ is divergent.

- If

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \sqrt[n]{|a_n|} = 1,$$

then no information about the series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_n$ can be extracted from the root test.

First Year Linear Algebra

9 Vectors 50
9.1 Vectors and Linear Combinations 50
9.2 Dot Products and Cross Products 52
9.2.1 Dot Products 52
Vector Projections 54
9.2.2 Square Matrices and the Determinant 55
9.2.3 The Cross-Product 56

10 Solving Linear Equations 59
10.1 Vectors and Linear Equations 59
10.1.1 Introduction to the Row and Column Picture: Two Equations, Two Unknowns 59
10.1.2 Three Equations, Three Unknowns 60
10.2 Elimination 61
10.3 LU Factorization 64

11 Subspaces 66
11.1 The Nullspace 66

12 The Einstein Summation Convention 69
12.1 Repeated Indices in Sums 69
12.1.1 Double Sums 70
12.1.2 Kronecker Delta and Algebraic Rules 71

Why Linear Algebra?

It is with very little exaggeration that I say that linear algebra is the singular most important area of mathematics. Our intuition for this subject rests largely on how we as humans naturally think about space, transformation, and relationships. Without prompt, we naturally organize data in arrays, think about directions and dimensions, and have well-developed intuition around addition and scaling, which are the fundamental operations of linear algebra.

What makes linear algebra so powerful is its remarkable ability to be both a highly effective practical tool and an interesting theoretical subject to study for its own sake. Systems of linear equations appear everywhere, from balancing chemical reactions to modeling physical phenomena to training neural networks. All this while the theoretical side is one of the best ways to introduce new mathematicians to proofs and its mastery and applications often illuminate other areas of math, like our understanding of symmetry (through representation theory) or spaces (through homology).

Linear algebra bridges the concrete and the abstract, and through crossing this bridge many rewards await. A matrix can simultaneously represent a database of information, a system of equations, a geometric transformation, or an abstract linear operator. Much like life, a matrix is what you make it. This versatility explains linear algebra's ubiquity across quantitative fields: computer graphics, quantum mechanics, machine learning, optimization, statistics, differential equations, and far beyond. Your ability to understand applications will provide manifold examples to test your theoretical knowledge, while your mastery of theory helps you make deeper deductions in applications. Each side enriches the other.

This book will honor the canonical way of introducing linear algebra, recognizing that this pedagogical structure exists for good reason. The first-year course is mostly calculation-based and is meant for you to get comfortable with performing concrete computations. This computational fluency builds the intuition to appreciate the abstract theory that follows. The second-year course is more abstract, introducing vector spaces axiomatically, exploring the structure of linear transformations, and proving the fundamental theorems that explain why the calculations work. Students who rush to abstraction without computational experience often struggle to develop geometric intuition, while those who master only calculations miss the unifying principles that make linear algebra so powerful. By working through both stages thoughtfully, you'll develop both the technical facility to solve problems and the conceptual framework to understand the deeper structure of the subject.

9 Vectors

§9.1 Vectors and Linear Combinations

The core object of study in linear algebra is the *vector*.

Definition 9.1.1.
By a **vector** (in this part), often denoted by $\mathbf{v}$ or $\vec{\mathbf{v}}$, we mean an ordered list of n numbers:

$$\mathbf{v} = \langle v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n \rangle .$$

The numbers $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n$ are called the **components** or **entries** of the vector.
We will restrict our attention to vectors whose components come from either the real numbers $\mathbb{R}$ or the complex numbers $\mathbb{C}$. That is, we write $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ or $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbb{C}^n$ depending on context.
Two basic operations on vectors are:

- **Vector addition:** Given $\mathbf{v} = \langle v_1, \dots, v_n \rangle$ and $\mathbf{w} = \langle w_1, \dots, w_n \rangle$, their sum is

$$\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w} = \langle v_1 + w_1, \dots, v_n + w_n \rangle .$$

- **Scalar multiplication:** Given a scalar $c \in \mathbb{R}$ or $\mathbb{C}$ and a vector $\mathbf{v} = \langle v_1, \dots, v_n \rangle$, their product is

$$c\mathbf{v} = \langle cv_1, \dots, cv_n \rangle .$$

Throughout linear algebra, we will often represent vectors with n components as an $n \times 1$ **matrix**, also called a column vector. That is,

$$\mathbf{v} = \langle v_1, \dots, v_n \rangle = \begin{bmatrix} v_1 \\ \vdots \\ v_n \end{bmatrix}.$$

This definition carries some immediate consequences on which the rest of linear algebra is built.
For any vector $\mathbf{v} = \langle v_1, \dots, v_n \rangle$, we can write:

$$\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \\ \vdots \\ v_n \end{bmatrix} = v_1 \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + v_2 \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + \cdots + v_n \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \sum_{j=1}^{n} v_j \mathbf{e}_j,$$

where $\mathbf{e}_j$ is the vector with a 1 in the jth component and 0 elsewhere.

Example 9.1.1.
Consider the two-dimensional vector $\mathbf{v} = \langle 3, 4 \rangle$. We can decompose $\mathbf{v}$ as

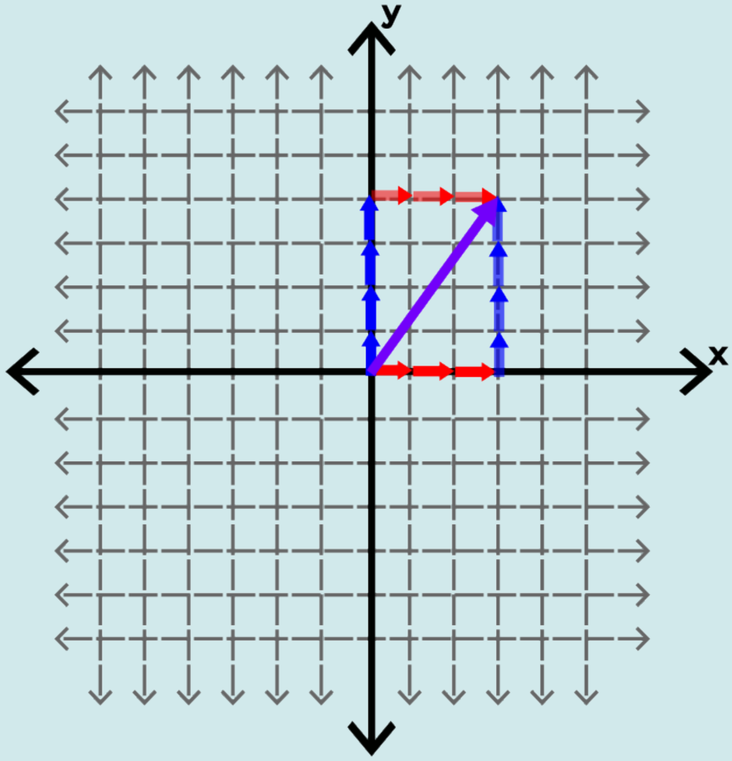
$$\mathbf{v} = 3\,\mathbf{e}_1 + 4\,\mathbf{e}_2$$

or equivalently,

$$\langle 3, 4 \rangle = 3\,\langle 1, 0 \rangle + 4\,\langle 0, 1 \rangle.$$

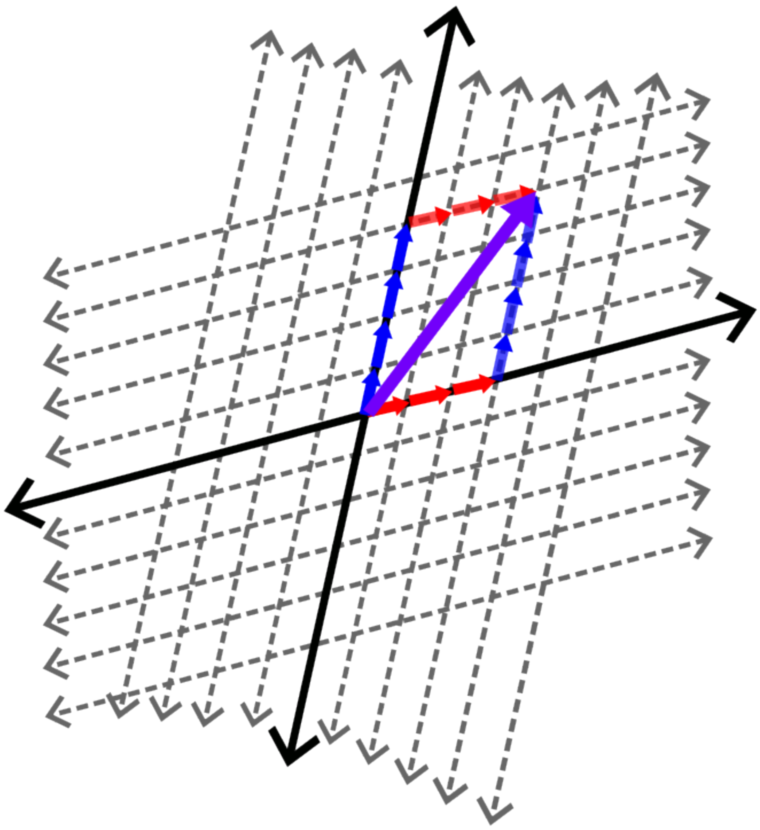
Geometrically, this means:

- Take 3 copies of the unit vector in the x-direction and place them tip-to-tail.
- Then take 4 copies of the unit vector in the y-direction and continue placing them tip-to-tail.
- The resulting vector $\langle 3, 4 \rangle$ is the diagonal of the resulting "L" shape — the vector sum.



This example highlights a subtle but important point about vectors: when we write the vector $\langle 3, 4\rangle$, we have implicitly chosen a basis. In this case, we have chosen the unit vector in the x-direction to be $\langle 1, 0\rangle$, and the unit vector in the y-direction to be $\langle 0, 1\rangle$. But this was a **choice** we made, nature did not hand us this grid.

We could just as well have chosen a different pair of linearly independent vectors and called those our new $\langle 1, 0\rangle$ and $\langle 0, 1\rangle$. This change of basis would then alter the meaning of $\langle 3, 4\rangle$, since that vector is **defined** as "3 copies of $\langle 1, 0\rangle$" plus "4 copies of $\langle 0, 1\rangle$." The numbers 3 and 4 are coordinates relative to a basis, not intrinsic properties of the vector itself.



This figure shows an equally valid way to define $\langle 1, 0\rangle$ and $\langle 0, 1\rangle$, leading to a vector $\langle 3, 4\rangle$ that is distinct from the one in our earlier example.

The key idea is this: mathematics, and any rigorous quantitative discipline, should not depend on how we choose to measure things. If we're describing something objective and external to us, then the way we draw our grid should not affect the truth of what we're describing.

In linear algebra, we will develop tools to *compare grids*. That is, if you and your colleague make observations using different measurement systems (different bases), we need a way to transform your measurements into theirs, and vice versa, without losing the underlying geometric or physical meaning.

Definition 9.1.2.
The **length** or **norm** of a vector $\mathbf{v} = \langle v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n \rangle$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$ is given by

$$|\mathbf{v}| = \|\mathbf{v}\| = \sqrt{\sum_{j=1}^{n} (v_j)^2} = \sqrt{(v_1)^2 + (v_2)^2 + \cdots + (v_n)^2}$$

Example 9.1.2.
What are the points on the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 4$ that are closest and furthest from the point $(x, y, z) = (3, 1, -1)$?

For the point closest to $(3, 1, -1)$, we want a vector that points in the same direction as $\mathbf{v} = \langle 3, 1, -1 \rangle$ but has length 2 (the radius of the sphere). To achieve this, we simply scale the components of $\mathbf{v}$ by $\dfrac{2}{\|\mathbf{v}\|} = \dfrac{2}{\sqrt{(3)^2 + (1)^2 + (-1)^2}} = \dfrac{2}{\sqrt{11}} = \dfrac{2\sqrt{11}}{11}$.

So we have the point

$$P_1 = \frac{2\sqrt{11}}{11}(3, 1, -1) = \boxed{\left(\frac{6\sqrt{11}}{11}, \frac{2\sqrt{11}}{11}, -\frac{2\sqrt{11}}{11}\right)}$$

And to find the point furthest from $(3, 1, -1)$, we want a vector pointing in the opposite direction, so we simply reverse the sign:

$$P_2 = -\frac{2\sqrt{11}}{11}(3, 1, -1) = \boxed{\left(-\frac{6\sqrt{11}}{11}, -\frac{2\sqrt{11}}{11}, \frac{2\sqrt{11}}{11}\right)}$$

§9.2 Dot Products and Cross Products

§9.2.1 Dot Products

Definition 9.2.1.
An n-dimensional **row vector** is a $1 \times n$ matrix:

$$v = \begin{bmatrix} v_1 & \cdots & v_n \end{bmatrix}.$$

While row and column vectors contain the same components, they behave differently in matrix operations. For now, we will set aside these distinctions and treat them informally.

Definition 9.2.2.
Given two real vectors

$$\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} v_1 \\ \vdots \\ v_n \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} w_1 \\ \vdots \\ w_n \end{bmatrix},$$

we define the **dot product** of $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{w}$, denoted $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w}$, as

$$\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w} = \sum_{j=1}^{n} v_j w_j.$$

For those familiar with matrix multiplication, the dot product can also be viewed as the product of the row vector corresponding to $\mathbf{v}$ and the column vector $\mathbf{w}$.
We will sometimes denote the dot product of $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{w}$ as $\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle$.

Before we investigate the geometric properties of the dot product, we first verify a key algebraic property.

Theorem 9.2.1.
The dot product is linear in each argument.

Proof.
We begin by noting that the dot product is symmetric in its arguments: $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{w} \cdot \mathbf{v}$. This means it suffices to show linearity in the first argument. Let $\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$. Then

$$\mathbf{u} + \lambda\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} u_1 + \lambda v_1 \\ \vdots \\ u_n + \lambda v_n \end{bmatrix}.$$

So,

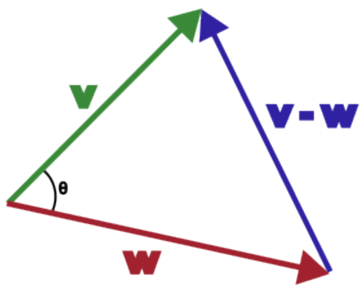
$$\begin{aligned}(\mathbf{u} + \lambda\mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{w} &= \sum_{j=1}^{n} (u_j + \lambda v_j) w_j \\ &= \sum_{j=1}^{n} u_j w_j + \lambda \sum_{j=1}^{n} v_j w_j \\ &= \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{w} + \lambda\, \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w}.\end{aligned}$$

■

Note that we can express the length $|\mathbf{v}|$ of a vector $\mathbf{v}$ in terms of the dot product:

$$|\mathbf{v}|^2 = \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v}.$$

Armed with this identity, we can now give a geometric interpretation of what the dot product measures. Consider the following figure:



Applying the Law of Cosines to the triangle formed by the vectors, we obtain:

$$|\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{w}|^2 = |\mathbf{v}|^2 + |\mathbf{w}|^2 - 2|\mathbf{v}||\mathbf{w}| \cos(\theta).$$

We now rewrite both sides using the dot product:

$$\begin{aligned}(\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{w}) \cdot (\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{w}) &= \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w} \cdot \mathbf{w} - 2\,\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w} && \text{by bilinearity and symmetry} \\ &= \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w} \cdot \mathbf{w} - 2|\mathbf{v}||\mathbf{w}| \cos(\theta).\end{aligned}$$

Comparing both expressions, we conclude

$$\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w} = |\mathbf{v}||\mathbf{w}| \cos(\theta).$$

This final expression tells us that the dot product measures how much the vector $\mathbf{v}$ points in the direction of $\mathbf{w}$, and vice versa. Here is the first consequence of this fact.

Theorem 9.2.2 (The dot product detects orthogonality)**.**
Two nonzero vectors $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{w}$ are perpendicular if and only if $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w} = 0$.

Proof.
$\Rightarrow$ Suppose $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{w}$ are perpendicular. Then the angle θ between them satisfies $\cos(\theta) = 0$. By the geometric definition of the dot product,

$$\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w} = |\mathbf{v}||\mathbf{w}| \cos(\theta) = |\mathbf{v}||\mathbf{w}| \cdot 0 = 0.$$

$\Leftarrow$ Conversely, suppose $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w} = 0$. Then again using the geometric definition,

$$\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w} = |\mathbf{v}||\mathbf{w}| \cos(\theta) = 0.$$

Since $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{w}$ are nonzero, $|\mathbf{v}| \neq 0$ and $|\mathbf{w}| \neq 0$. Therefore, it must be that $\cos(\theta) = 0$, which implies that $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$. In other words, the vectors are perpendicular. ■

Theorem 9.2.3 (The dot product detects colinearity or parallelism).
Two nonzero vectors $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{w}$ are colinear (parallel or antiparallel) if and only if

$$\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w} = |\mathbf{v}||\mathbf{w}| \quad \text{or} \quad \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w} = -|\mathbf{v}||\mathbf{w}|.$$

Proof.
$\Rightarrow$ Suppose $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{w}$ are colinear. Then the angle θ between them is either 0 (parallel, same direction) or π (parallel, opposite direction). By the dot product formula,

$$\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w} = |\mathbf{v}||\mathbf{w}| \cos\theta,$$

so if $\theta = 0$, $\cos\theta = 1$ and $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w} = |\mathbf{v}||\mathbf{w}|$. If $\theta = \pi$, $\cos\theta = -1$ and $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w} = -|\mathbf{v}||\mathbf{w}|$.

$\Leftarrow$ Conversely, suppose

$$\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w} = \pm|\mathbf{v}||\mathbf{w}|.$$

Then by the dot product formula,

$$\cos\theta = \pm 1,$$

which means $\theta = 0$ or $\theta = \pi$ radians. In either case, $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{w}$ are colinear. ■

Exercise 9.2.1.
Let $\mathbf{x} = \langle 1, 1 \rangle$. Find all vectors $\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^2$ such that $\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{y} = 0$ and $||\mathbf{x}|| = ||\mathbf{y}||$.

Solution.
We require that $\mathbf{y}$ is perpendicular to $\mathbf{x}$. So $\mathbf{y} = \langle \lambda, -\lambda \rangle$ for some $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$. Since $||\mathbf{x}|| = ||\mathbf{y}||$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \sqrt{2} &= \sqrt{(\lambda)^2 + (-\lambda)^2} \\ 2 &= 2(\lambda)^2 \\ 1 &= \lambda^2 \end{aligned}$$

This gives that $\lambda = \pm 1$ so $\boxed{\mathbf{y} = \langle 1, -1 \rangle}$ and $\boxed{\mathbf{y} = \langle -1, 1 \rangle}$. ●

Another useful application of the dot product is that it helps us define lines, planes, hyperplanes etc.

Consider a line $ax + by = c$. We know that this line is parallel to $ax + by = 0$, we will focus on this form for the time being. We can express $ax + by = 0$ in terms of the dot product. Namely,

$$\begin{bmatrix} a & b \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = 0.$$

By Theorem 9.2.2, this means that the line $ax + by = 0$ consists of all vectors $\langle x, y \rangle$ that are perpendicular to $\langle a, b \rangle$ and that adding c to the right hand side simply shifts this line without change its slope/direction.

This is a preferable interpretation because it generalizes quite easily to higher dimensions. In particular, if we have the equation

$$\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_j x_j = 0$$

Then the solution consists of all vectors $\langle x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n \rangle$ that are perpendicular to $\langle a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n \rangle$. Adding a constant to the right hand side simply shifts this hyperplane in $\mathbb{R}^n$, again, without changing slope or direction.

Vector Projections

Another very useful application of the dot product is the calculation of how much one vector points in the direction of the other.

We denote the **vector projection of $\mathbf{w}$ onto $\mathbf{v}$** as $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{w}$. Now since $\mathbf{w}$ projects onto $\mathbf{v}$, $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{w}$ must point in the direction of $\mathbf{v}$ or more specifically, $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{w}$ must point in the direction of $\frac{\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|}$, the unit vector in the direction of $\mathbf{v}$. So

$$\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{w} = |\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{w}| \frac{\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|}.$$

So all we need to do is find $|\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{w}|$. Luckily our friend, the dot product, can help. If we consider the right triangle with $\mathbf{w}$ as the hypotenuse and $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{w}$ as one of the legs, then

$$\cos(\theta) = \frac{|\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{w}|}{|\mathbf{w}|}$$

Now we can multiply both sides by $|\mathbf{w}|$ to get

$$|\mathbf{w}| \cos(\theta) = |\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{w}|.$$

While it might seem like we are done, I did promise you that the dot product will show up. In that spirit, let us multiply and divide the left hand side by $|\mathbf{v}|$ to get

$$\frac{|\mathbf{v}||\mathbf{w}| \cos(\theta)}{|\mathbf{v}|} = |\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{w}|$$

so

$$\boxed{|\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{w}| = \frac{\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w}}{|\mathbf{v}|}}$$

Substituting this into our earlier expression, we get

$$\boxed{\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{w} = \frac{\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w}}{\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v}}\mathbf{v}}$$

§9.2.2 Square Matrices and the Determinant

Definition 9.2.3.
By an $m \times n$ **matrix**, we mean an m-by-n rectangular array of numbers:

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \dots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \dots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \dots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix}.$$

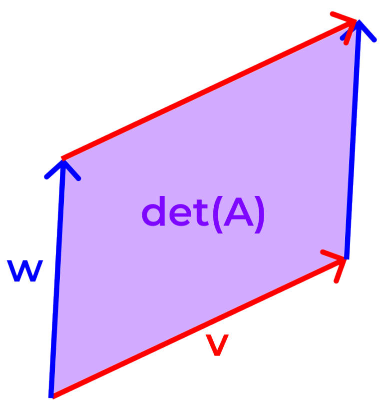
The entry a_{ij} denotes the element in the ith row and jth column. Unless otherwise stated, we assume the entries a_{ij} are real numbers. If $m = n$, we say A is a **square matrix**.

Recall that a $1 \times n$ matrix is a *row vector* and an $m \times 1$ matrix is called a *column vector*.

If we are given two vectors $\mathbf{v} = \langle v_1, v_2 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{w} = \langle w_1, w_2 \rangle$, we may arrange them as **columns of a matrix** A.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} v_1 & w_1 \\ v_2 & w_2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

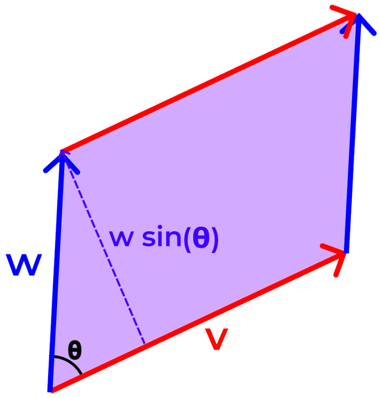
Furthermore there is a special operation called the **determinant** of A that returns the signed area spanned by the vectors $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{w}$. We will denote this as $\det(A)$.



One of the reasons the dot product is so attractive is that it can be computed using components only. The determinant can be similarly calculated from components only. Here is how.
Recall that the area of a parallelogram is base times height. We can find the height by taking the length of the component of **w** which does not point in direction of **v**. This is simply $|\mathbf{w}||\sin(\theta)|$, where θ is the angle formed between **v** and **w**. To summarize,

$$\begin{aligned}\text{area of a parallelogram} &= \text{base times height} \\ |\det(A)| &= |\mathbf{v}||\mathbf{w}||\sin(\theta)|\end{aligned}$$

Note: Here we are assuming $\theta \in \left[0, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]$ for visualization's sake. Of course, $\theta \in [0, 2\pi)$ would explain why the area is *signed*.

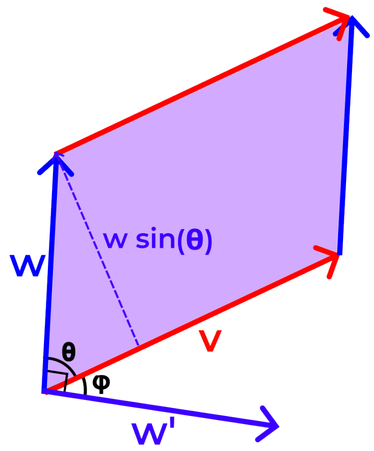


Now, we can use a useful identity $\sin(\theta) = \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right)$. Substituting this in, we have

$$|\det(A)| = |\mathbf{v}||\mathbf{w}|\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right)$$

This is looking like a dot product. To get us over the finish line, we will define a new vector $\mathbf{w}'$ with the same length as **w**, forms an angle of $\varphi = \frac{\pi}{2} - \theta$ with **v**, and forms a $\frac{\pi}{2}$ angle with **w**. Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}\det(A) &= |\mathbf{v}|\left|\mathbf{w}'\right|\cos(\varphi) \\ &= \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w}'\end{aligned}$$



By rotating **w** counterclockwise by 90°, we obtain $\mathbf{w}' = \langle w_2, -w_1\rangle$. This choice ensures that $\mathbf{w}'$ is perpendicular to **w**, has the same magnitude, and preserves the correct sign for the determinant based on the orientation of the vectors. So

$$\begin{aligned}\det(A) &= \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w}' \\ &= \langle v_1, v_2\rangle \cdot \langle w_2, -w_1\rangle \\ &= v_1 w_2 - v_2 w_1\end{aligned}$$

§9.2.3 The Cross-Product

Definition 9.2.4.
The **cross product** is a function $C : \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^3 \to \mathbb{R}^3$ that takes two vectors $\mathbf{x} = \langle x_1, x_2, x_3 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{y} = \langle y_1, y_2, y_3 \rangle$ and produces the vector:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{y} &= \det \begin{bmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{i}} & \hat{\mathbf{j}} & \hat{\mathbf{k}} \\ x_1 & x_2 & x_3 \\ y_1 & y_2 & y_3 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \det \begin{bmatrix} x_2 & x_3 \\ y_2 & y_3 \end{bmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{i}} - \det \begin{bmatrix} x_1 & x_3 \\ y_1 & y_3 \end{bmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{j}} + \det \begin{bmatrix} x_1 & x_2 \\ y_1 & y_2 \end{bmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{k}} \\
&= (x_2y_3 - x_3y_2)\,\hat{\mathbf{i}} + (x_3y_1 - x_1y_3)\,\hat{\mathbf{j}} + (x_1y_2 - x_2y_1)\,\hat{\mathbf{k}} \\
&= \langle x_2y_3 - x_3y_2,\ x_3y_1 - x_1y_3,\ x_1y_2 - x_2y_1 \rangle .
\end{aligned}$$

It is trivial to check that $\mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{y} = -(\mathbf{y} \times \mathbf{x})$.

Lemma 9.2.4.
The vector $\mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{y}$ is perpendicular to both $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{y}$.

Proof.

■

Exercise 9.2.2.
Suppose that $\mathbf{A} = \langle -1, 0, 1 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{B} = \langle 1, -2, 2 \rangle$. Find

i) A vector perpendicular to both $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ whose y-component is 6.

ii) A vector perpendicular to both $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ whose length is 6.

Solution.
For both parts of the problem, we need to compute $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} &= \det \begin{bmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{i}} & \hat{\mathbf{j}} & \hat{\mathbf{k}} \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \det \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -2 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{i}} - \det \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{j}} + \det \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 1 & -2 \end{bmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{k}} \\
&= 2\hat{\mathbf{i}} + \hat{\mathbf{j}} + 2\hat{\mathbf{k}} \\
&= \langle 2, 3, 2 \rangle
\end{aligned}$$

We can verify that we have the correct vector since $(\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}) \cdot \mathbf{A} = 0$ and e $(\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}) \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$.

i)
To find a vector perpendicular to both $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ whose y-component is 6, we just need to take our $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}$ vector and scale it so that its y-component is 6. This gives us

$$\boxed{\mathbf{v} = \langle 4, 6, 4 \rangle}.$$

ii)
To find a vector perpendicular to both $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ whose length is 6, we first need to calculate $|\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}|$, which is

$$|\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}| = \sqrt{2^2 + 3^2 + 2^2} = \sqrt{17}$$

Now, we just need to scale $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}$ by the quantity $\frac{6\sqrt{17}}{17}$ (since $\frac{\sqrt{17}}{17}$ normalizes $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}$ and multiplying by 6 will scale this new unit vector) so we have

$$\boxed{\mathbf{w} = \left\langle \frac{12\sqrt{17}}{17}, \frac{18\sqrt{17}}{17}, \frac{12\sqrt{17}}{17} \right\rangle}.$$

●

Recalling our discussion of how the dot product

$$a \cdot (\mathbf{x} - p) = 0$$

determines a line in $\mathbb{R}^n$, we now have the tools to find a plane in $\mathbb{R}^3$ given 3 points on it.

Example 9.2.1.
Find the equation of a plane that contains the points. $A = (4, 1, 3)$, $B = (1, 5, 4)$, and $C = (-3, 2, 6)$.
We first find $\vec{\mathbf{CA}}$ and $\vec{\mathbf{CB}}$.

$$\vec{\mathbf{CA}} = \langle 4 + 3, 1 - 2, 2 - 6 \rangle = \boxed{\langle 7, -1, -4 \rangle} \quad \text{and} \quad \vec{\mathbf{CB}} = \langle 1 + 3, 5 - 2, 4 - 6 \rangle = \boxed{\langle 4, 3, -2 \rangle}.$$

To find the normal, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\mathbf{n}} &= \vec{\mathbf{CA}} \times \vec{\mathbf{CB}} \\ &= \det \begin{bmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{i}} & \hat{\mathbf{j}} & \hat{\mathbf{k}} \\ 7 & -1 & -4 \\ 4 & 3 & -2 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \det \begin{bmatrix} -1 & -4 \\ 3 & -2 \end{bmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{i}} - \det \begin{bmatrix} 7 & -4 \\ 4 & -2 \end{bmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{j}} + \det \begin{bmatrix} 7 & -1 \\ 4 & 3 \end{bmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{k}} \\ &= \langle 14, -2, 25 \rangle \end{aligned}$$

So the equation of our plane is

$$\begin{aligned} 14(x - 1) - 2(y - 5) + 25(z - 4) &= 0 \\ 14x - 2y + 25z &= 104 \end{aligned}$$

We can check that A and C also lie on the plane.

Using the cross and dot products, we can find the volume of a parallelepiped to be

$$\text{volume of a parallelepiped} = |(A \times B) \cdot C|$$

where A, B, and C are vectors that make up its side.

10 Solving Linear Equations

§10.1 Vectors and Linear Equations

§10.1.1 Introduction to the Row and Column Picture: Two Equations, Two Unknowns

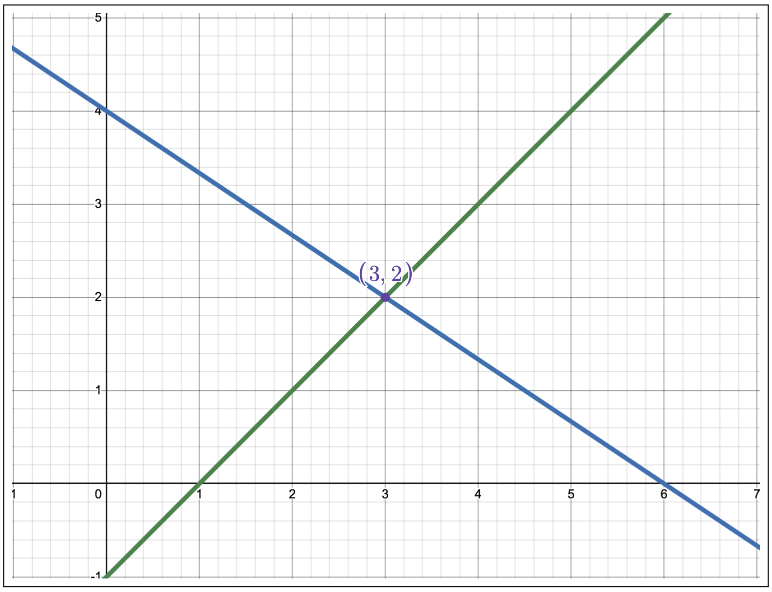
Suppose that we are given the following system of equations

$$2x + 3y = 12 \tag{10.1.1}$$
$$x - y = 1 \tag{10.1.2}$$

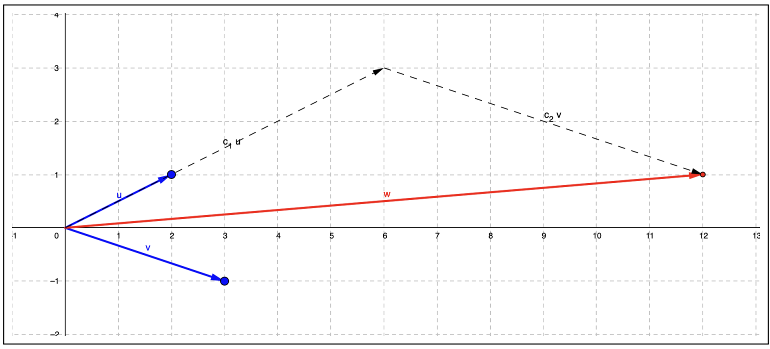
We wish to find values for x and y that simultaneously solve eq. (10.1.1) and eq. (10.1.2).
We can first view this system by the rows; that is, we wish to find the point of intersection of the lines $2x + 3y = 13$ and $x - y = 1$, which is shown in Figure 10.1a. This picture is quite familiar.
The novel idea is to now consider the column picture. We can combine the above system into a single vector equation

$$x\begin{pmatrix}2\\1\end{pmatrix} + y\begin{pmatrix}3\\-1\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}12\\1\end{pmatrix}.$$

Now, we wish to find the correct scalars x and y that makes this equation true, this is highlighted in Figure 10.1b.



(a) The lines $2x + 3y = 12$ (blue) and $x - y = 1$ (green) intersect at $(3, 2)$.



(b) $c_1 = x = 3$ copies of $u = \begin{pmatrix}2\\1\end{pmatrix}$ plus $c_2 = y = 2$ copies of $v = \begin{pmatrix}3\\-1\end{pmatrix}$ yields $w = \begin{pmatrix}12\\1\end{pmatrix}$.

Figure 10.1: Geometric and algebraic views of solving a linear system.

Now to solve this equation, we observe that we can add 3 copies of Equation (10.1.2) to Equation (10.1.1) to get

$$2x + 3y + 3(x - y) = 12 + 3(1) \implies 5x = 15 \tag{10.1.3}$$

From Equation (10.1.3), we see that $x = 3$ and then substitution into either Equation (10.1.1) or Equation (10.1.2) (If you are new to this, substitute into both to verify consistency) and solving for y, we get that $y = 2$, which is consistent with both of our pictures.
The standard way to write this equation in linear algebra is collect all of our left coefficients in a **coefficient matrix** A where

$$A = \begin{pmatrix}2 & 3\\1 & -1\end{pmatrix}.$$

Then we collect our variables

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix}x\\y\end{pmatrix}$$

and finally our right hand side

$$\mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 12 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Combining everything, we have

$$A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b} \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 12 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

§10.1.2 Three Equations, Three Unknowns

Example 10.1.1.
Consider the following system of three equations with three unknowns:

$$\begin{aligned} 3x + y - z &= 2 &\quad (1) \\ 4x + 2y + 3z &= 23 &\quad (2) \\ x - 3y + 2z &= 19 &\quad (3) \end{aligned}$$

Using the row/plane picture, the normals to the three planes are

$$\mathbf{n}_1 = (3, 1, -1), \qquad \mathbf{n}_2 = (4, 2, 3), \qquad \mathbf{n}_3 = (1, -3, 2).$$

None of these is a scalar multiple of another so no two planes are parallel. This means that the first two planes intersect along a line and that line will intersect the third plane at a point. That point will be the solution to our system.

Now solve the system by eliminating y. One convenient approach is to form combinations that cancel the y-terms.

First, add (1), (2), and (3):

$$(3x + y - z) + (4x + 2y + 3z) + (x - 3y + 2z) = 8x + 0y + 4z = 44,$$

so

$$8x + 4z = 44 \implies 2x + z = 11. \tag{A}$$

Next, take -1 times (1), plus 2 times (2), plus 1 times (3):

$$-1 \cdot (3x + y - z) + 2 \cdot (4x + 2y + 3z) + 1 \cdot (x - 3y + 2z)$$

Compute coefficients:

$$x: \ -3 + 8 + 1 = 6, \qquad y: \ -1 + 4 - 3 = 0, \qquad z: \ 1 + 6 + 2 = 9,$$

RHS: $-2 + 46 + 19 = 63$. Thus

$$6x + 9z = 63 \implies 2x + 3z = 21. \tag{B}$$

Now solve the 2×2 system (A) and (B):

$$\begin{cases} 2x + z = 11 \\ 2x + 3z = 21 \end{cases}$$

Subtract (A) from (B) to eliminate x:

$$(2x + 3z) - (2x + z) = 2z = 21 - 11 = 10 \implies z = 5.$$

Substitute $z = 5$ into (A):

$$2x + 5 = 11 \implies 2x = 6 \implies x = 3.$$

Finally substitute $x = 3$, $z = 5$ into equation (1) to find y:

$$3(3) + y - (5) = 2 \implies 9 + y - 5 = 2 \implies y = -2.$$

So the solution is

$$\boxed{(x, y, z) = (3, -2, 5)}.$$

Writing the system in matrix form $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$:

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & -1 \\ 4 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & -3 & 2 \end{bmatrix}, \qquad \mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix}, \qquad \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 23 \\ 19 \end{bmatrix}.$$

§10.2 Elimination

We want a systematic way of solving systems of linear equations. Gaussian elimination provides this. We first note that the system

$$\begin{aligned} 3x + y - z &= 2 \\ 4x + 2y + 3z &= 23 \\ x - 3y + 2z &= 19 \end{aligned}$$

can be written more compactly as an **augmented matrix**.

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 3 & 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 4 & 2 & 3 & 23 \\ 1 & -3 & 2 & 19 \end{array}\right]$$

Here each equation gets assigned a row. We will dedicate this section to motivating the row operations needed for Gaussian elimination.

Let us take, for example the first two equations

$$\begin{aligned} 3x + y - z &= 2 \\ 4x + 2y + 3z &= 23 \end{aligned}$$

We can take arbitrary linear combinations of these two equations and *replace one equation*. For example, we can take three copies of the second equation and subtract from it four copies of the first. This gives us

$$3\,(4x + 2y + 3z = 23) - 4\,(3x + y - z = 2) \implies (12x + 6y + 9z = 69) - (12x + 4y - 4z = 8) \implies \boxed{0x + 2y + 13z = 61}$$

Notice that because we are taking linear combinations of these two equations, the solution we found earlier of $(x, y, z) = (3, -2, 5)$ is a solution to

$$0x + 2y + 13z = 61.$$

We can verify this: $2(-2) + 13(5) = -4 + 65 = 61$. As such the system

$$\begin{aligned} 3x + y - z &= 2 \\ 0x + 2y + 13z &= 61 \\ x - 3y + 2z &= 19 \end{aligned}$$

still has the same solution as above. So we can write our augmented system as

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 3 & 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 2 & 13 & 61 \\ 1 & -3 & 2 & 19 \end{array}\right]$$

Finally note that row exchange is trivially acceptable since our solution shouldn't depend on the order in which we write out equations.

Notice that if we have an augmented matrix of the form

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} a & b & c & s \\ 0 & d & e & t \\ 0 & 0 & f & u \end{array}\right]$$

This corresponds to the system of equations

$$\begin{aligned} ax + by + cz &= s \\ dy + ez &= t \\ fz &= u \end{aligned}$$

So then we can simply solve for z in the third equation, then back substitute our solution for z into the second equation to solve for y, and finally solve for x by substituting the solutions for y and z. *This is the goal for Gaussian elimination*. We wish to convert an arbitrary linear system into an **upper triangular matrix.**

Example 10.2.1.
Let us try Gaussian elimination with a system we are very familiar with

$$\begin{aligned} 3x + y - z &= 2 \\ 4x + 2y + 3z &= 23 \\ x - 3y + 2z &= 19 \end{aligned}$$

Converting to an augmented matrix, we get

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 3 & 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 4 & 2 & 3 & 23 \\ 1 & -3 & 2 & 19 \end{array}\right]$$

First, we eliminate the x-term in the second row by replacing R_2 with $(3R_2 - 4R_1)$:

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 3 & 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 4 & 2 & 3 & 23 \\ 1 & -3 & 2 & 19 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{(3R_2 - 4R_1) \to R_2} \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 3 & 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 2 & 13 & 61 \\ 1 & -3 & 2 & 19 \end{array}\right]$$

Next, we eliminate the x-term in the third row by replacing R_3 with $(3R_3 - R_1)$:

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 3 & 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 2 & 13 & 61 \\ 1 & -3 & 2 & 19 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{(3R_3 - R_1) \to R_3} \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 3 & 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 2 & 13 & 61 \\ 0 & -10 & 7 & 55 \end{array}\right]$$

Finally, we eliminate the y-term in the third row by replacing R_3 with $(R_3 + 5R_2)$:

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 3 & 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 2 & 13 & 61 \\ 0 & -10 & 7 & 55 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{(R_3 + 5R_2) \to R_3} \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 3 & 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 2 & 13 & 61 \\ 0 & 0 & 72 & 360 \end{array}\right]$$

We now have the upper triangular system

$$\begin{aligned} 3x + y - z &= 2 \\ 2y + 13z &= 61 \\ 72z &= 360 \end{aligned}$$

Now we use back substitution. From the third equation, we see that $z = \dfrac{360}{72} = 5$, so $\boxed{z = 5}$.
From the second equation:

$$\begin{aligned} 2y + 13(5) &= 61 \\ 2y + 65 &= 61 \\ 2y &= -4 \\ y &= -2 \end{aligned}$$

so $\boxed{y = -2}$.
Finally, from the first equation:

$$\begin{aligned} 3x + (-2) - 5 &= 2 \\ 3x - 7 &= 2 \\ 3x &= 9 \\ x &= 3 \end{aligned}$$

so $\boxed{x = 3}$.
Therefore, our solution is $(x, y, z) = (3, -2, 5)$.

Example 10.2.2.

Use Gaussian elimination to solve the system

$$\begin{aligned} 3w + 2x + 11y + 5z &= 25 \\ -2w + 7x - 8y + z &= 13 \\ 12w - 3x + 9y + 4z &= -21 \\ -6w + x - 4y - 3z &= 15 \end{aligned}$$

We have the following augmented matrix

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrrr|r} 3 & 2 & 11 & 5 & 25 \\ -2 & 7 & -8 & 1 & 13 \\ 12 & -3 & 9 & 4 & -21 \\ -6 & 1 & -4 & -3 & 15 \end{array}\right]$$

For the first column, we have

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrrr|r} 3 & 2 & 11 & 5 & 25 \\ -2 & 7 & -8 & 1 & 13 \\ 12 & -3 & 9 & 4 & -21 \\ -6 & 1 & -4 & -3 & 15 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{(3R_2 + 2R_1) \to R_2} \left[\begin{array}{rrrr|r} 3 & 2 & 11 & 5 & 25 \\ 0 & 25 & -2 & 13 & 89 \\ 12 & -3 & 9 & 4 & -21 \\ -6 & 1 & -4 & -3 & 15 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrrr|r} 3 & 2 & 11 & 5 & 25 \\ 0 & 25 & -2 & 13 & 89 \\ 12 & -3 & 9 & 4 & -21 \\ -6 & 1 & -4 & -3 & 15 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{(R_3 - 4R_1) \to R_3} \left[\begin{array}{rrrr|r} 3 & 2 & 11 & 5 & 25 \\ 0 & 25 & -2 & 13 & 89 \\ 0 & -11 & -35 & -16 & -121 \\ -6 & 1 & -4 & -3 & 15 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrrr|r} 3 & 2 & 11 & 5 & 25 \\ 0 & 25 & -2 & 13 & 89 \\ 0 & -11 & -35 & -16 & -121 \\ -6 & 1 & -4 & -3 & 15 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{(R_4 + 2R_1) \to R_3} \left[\begin{array}{rrrr|r} 3 & 2 & 11 & 5 & 25 \\ 0 & 25 & -2 & 13 & 89 \\ 0 & -11 & -35 & -16 & -121 \\ 0 & 5 & 18 & 7 & 65 \end{array}\right]$$

For the second column, we have

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrrr|r} 3 & 2 & 11 & 5 & 25 \\ 0 & 25 & -2 & 13 & 89 \\ 0 & -11 & -35 & -16 & -121 \\ 0 & 5 & 18 & 7 & 65 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{(25R_3 + 11R_2) \to R_3} \left[\begin{array}{rrrr|r} 3 & 2 & 11 & 5 & 25 \\ 0 & 25 & -2 & 13 & 89 \\ 0 & 0 & -897 & -257 & -2046 \\ 0 & 5 & 18 & 7 & 65 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrrr|r} 3 & 2 & 11 & 5 & 25 \\ 0 & 25 & -2 & 13 & 89 \\ 0 & 0 & -897 & -257 & -2046 \\ 0 & 5 & 18 & 7 & 65 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{(5R_4 - R_2) \to R_4} \left[\begin{array}{rrrr|r} 3 & 2 & 11 & 5 & 25 \\ 0 & 25 & -2 & 13 & 89 \\ 0 & 0 & -897 & -257 & -2046 \\ 0 & 0 & 92 & 22 & 236 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrrr|r} 3 & 2 & 11 & 5 & 25 \\ 0 & 25 & -2 & 13 & 89 \\ 0 & 0 & -897 & -257 & -2046 \\ 0 & 0 & 92 & 22 & 236 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{\left(\frac{1}{2}R_4\right) \to R_4} \left[\begin{array}{rrrr|r} 3 & 2 & 11 & 5 & 25 \\ 0 & 25 & -2 & 13 & 89 \\ 0 & 0 & -897 & -257 & -2046 \\ 0 & 0 & 46 & 11 & 118 \end{array}\right]$$

Finally for the third column, we have

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrrr|r} 3 & 2 & 11 & 5 & 25 \\ 0 & 25 & -2 & 13 & 89 \\ 0 & 0 & -897 & -257 & -2046 \\ 0 & 0 & 46 & 11 & 118 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{(897R_4 + 46R_3) \to R_4} \left[\begin{array}{rrrr|r} 3 & 2 & 11 & 5 & 25 \\ 0 & 25 & -2 & 13 & 89 \\ 0 & 0 & -897 & -257 & -2046 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1955 & 11730 \end{array}\right]$$

We now have the upper triangular system

$$\begin{aligned} 3w + 2x + 11y + 5z &= 25 \\ 25x - 2y + 13z &= 89 \\ -897y - 257z &= -2046 \\ -1955z &= 11730 \end{aligned}$$

Now we use back substitution. From the fourth equation, we see that $z = \dfrac{11730}{-1955} = -6$, so $\boxed{z = -6}$.

From the third equation:

$$\begin{aligned}-897y - 257(-6) &= -2046\\ -897y + 1542 &= -2046\\ -897y &= -3588\\ y &= 4\end{aligned}$$

so $\boxed{y = 4}$.

From the second equation:

$$\begin{aligned}25x - 2(4) + 13(-6) &= 89\\ 25x - 8 - 78 &= 89\\ 25x - 86 &= 89\\ 25x &= 175\\ x &= 7\end{aligned}$$

so $\boxed{x = 7}$.

Finally, from the first equation:

$$\begin{aligned}3w + 2(7) + 11(4) + 5(-6) &= 25\\ 3w + 14 + 44 - 30 &= 25\\ 3w + 28 &= 25\\ 3w &= -3\\ w &= -1\end{aligned}$$

so $\boxed{w = -1}$.

Therefore, our solution is $(w, x, y, z) = (-1, 7, 4, -6)$.

§10.3 LU Factorization

This section relies on the key observation that the steps behind elimination are linear. As such, we can record the elimination steps in a matrix.

Example 10.3.1.

Suppose that we want to transform the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 6 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$ into an upper triangular matrix U. To do this, we need to subtract 3 copies of row 1 from row 2. We record this operation in a matrix $E_{21} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ The ones on the diagonal indicate that we are not scaling any rows and the -3 in the $(i, j) = (2, 1)$ entry records the operation of subtracting 3 copies of row 1 from row 2. Sure enough,

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 6 & 8 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} (1\cdot 2) + (0\cdot 6) & (1\cdot 1) + (0\cdot 8) \\ (-3\cdot 2) + (1\cdot 6) & (-3\cdot 1) + (1\cdot 8) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

Moreover, since we know what E_{21} represents, we can calculate E_{21}^{-1} in our heads. Namely, to undo $R_2 - 3R_1 \to R_2$, we simply apply the operation $R_2 + 3R_1 \to R_2$. So

$$E_{21}^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

It easy to check that $E_{21}^{-1}E_{21} = I$. Moreover,

$$\begin{aligned}E_{21}A &= U\\ E_{21}^{-1}E_{21}A &= E_{21}^{-1}U\\ A &= E_{21}^{-1}U\end{aligned}$$

This is the goal. Letting $E_{21}^{-1} = L$, we have factored A into a lower triangular matrix times an upper triangular matrix. This is an example of **LU factorization**.

11 Subspaces

§11.1 The Nullspace

Definition 11.1.1.
Let A be an $m \times n$ matrix. The **nullspace** of A, denoted by $\operatorname{null}(A)$ is the set of vectors in $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ such that $A\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0} \in \mathbb{R}^m$.

Example 11.1.1.
What is the nullspace of the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & -7 \\ 1 & 0 & -2 \\ 2 & 1 & -5 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Gaussian elimination comes to the rescue!

$$\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & -7 \\ 1 & 0 & -2 \\ 2 & 1 & -5 \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{(3R_2 - R_1) \to R_2} \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & -7 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & -5 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & -7 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & -5 \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{(3R_3 - 2R_1) \to R_3} \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & -7 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & -7 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{(R_3 + R_2) \to R_3} \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & -7 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Reading off the equations from this reduced matrix, we have the system

$$\begin{aligned} 3x_1 + x_2 - 7x_3 &= 0 \\ -x_2 + x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

From the second equation, $x_2 = x_3$. Since x_3 is a free variable, we can set it to any value. Let's choose $x_3 = 1$ for convenience, so $x_2 = 1$ as well. Then

$$\begin{aligned} 3x_1 + 1 - 7 &= 0 \\ 3x_1 &= 6 \\ x_1 &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

So

$$\boxed{\operatorname{null}(A) = \operatorname{span}\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \right\}.}$$

Exercise 11.1.1.
Let $A : \mathbb{R}^4 \to \mathbb{R}^3$ be represented by the matrix:

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 5 \\ 2 & 4 & 8 & 12 \\ 3 & 6 & 7 & 13 \end{bmatrix}$$

i) Convert the augmented matrix $[A \mid \vec{\mathbf{b}}]$ to an upper triangular system $[U \mid \vec{\mathbf{c}}]$.

ii) Convert $[U \mid \vec{\mathbf{c}}]$ to reduced row echelon form $[R \mid \vec{\mathbf{d}}]$.

iii) What is $\operatorname{col}(A)$?

iv) What is $\operatorname{null}(A)$?

v) Given a vector $\vec{\mathbf{b}} \in \mathrm{col}(A)$, what is the general form of all solutions to $A\vec{\mathbf{x}} = \vec{\mathbf{b}}$?

vi) Find a particular and then a general solution to the $A\vec{\mathbf{x}} = \langle 0, 6, -6 \rangle$.

Solution.

i) We have

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 2 & 3 & 5 & b_1 \\ 2 & 4 & 8 & 12 & b_2 \\ 3 & 6 & 7 & 13 & b_3 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{(R_2 - 2R_1) \to R_2} \left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 2 & 3 & 5 & b_1 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 2 & b_2 - 2b_1 \\ 3 & 6 & 7 & 13 & b_3 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 2 & 3 & 5 & b_1 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 2 & b_2 - 2b_1 \\ 3 & 6 & 7 & 13 & b_3 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{(R_3 - 2R_3) \to R_3} \left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 2 & 3 & 5 & b_1 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 2 & b_2 - 2b_1 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 & -2 & b_3 - 3b_1 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 2 & 3 & 5 & b_1 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 2 & b_2 - 2b_1 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 & -2 & b_3 - 3b_1 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{(R_2 + R_3) \to R_3} \left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 2 & 3 & 5 & b_1 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 2 & b_2 - 2b_1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & b_2 + b_3 - 5b_1 \end{array}\right]$$

So our upper triangular system becomes:

$$[U \mid \vec{\mathbf{c}}] = \left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 2 & 3 & 5 & b_1 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 2 & b_2 - 2b_1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & b_2 + b_3 - 5b_1 \end{array}\right] \tag{11.1.1}$$

ii) Working from our upper-triangular system, we have

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 2 & 3 & 5 & b_1 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 2 & b_2 - 2b_1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & b_2 + b_3 - 5b_1 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{\left(\frac{1}{2}R_2\right) \to R_2} \left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 2 & 3 & 5 & b_1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & \frac{1}{2}b_2 - b_1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & b_2 + b_3 - 5b_1 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 2 & 3 & 5 & b_1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & \frac{1}{2}b_2 - b_1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & b_2 + b_3 - 5b_1 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{(R_1 - 3R_2) \to R_1} \left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 2 & 0 & 2 & -3b_1 - \frac{3}{2}b_2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & \frac{1}{2}b_2 - b_1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & b_2 + b_3 - 5b_1 \end{array}\right]$$

So the reduced row echelon form is:

$$[R \mid \vec{\mathbf{d}}] = \left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 2 & 0 & 2 & -3b_1 - \frac{3}{2}b_2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & \frac{1}{2}b_2 - b_1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & b_2 + b_3 - 5b_1 \end{array}\right] \tag{11.1.2}$$

iii) From eq. (11.1.1) or eq. (11.1.2), we see that our system has a consistent solution only when

$$-5b_1 + b_2 + b_3 = 0 \tag{11.1.3}$$

which is the equation of a plane in $\mathbb{R}^3$.
We also see that our pivot columns from our original matrix are

$$\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 8 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$$

So

$$\mathrm{span} \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 8 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$$

should also be a representation of the column space. To verify this, take any vector $\vec{\mathbf{v}} \in \mathrm{span}\left\{\langle 1, 2, 3 \rangle, \langle 3, 8, 7 \rangle\right\}$. Then for some scalars $s, t \in \mathbb{R}$, we have $\vec{\mathbf{v}} = s\langle 1, 2, 3 \rangle + t\langle 3, 8, 7 \rangle$ or $\vec{\mathbf{v}} = \langle s + 3t, 2s + 8t, 3s + 7t \rangle$. Substituting the components of

$\vec{\mathbf{v}}$ into eq. (11.1.3), we have

$$\begin{aligned} -5v_1 + v_2 + v_3 &= -5\left(s+3t\right) + \left(2s+8t\right) + \left(3s+7t\right) \\ &= \left(-5s+2s+3s\right) + \left(-15t+8t+7t\right) \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Since the dimensions of both descriptions of the column space are equal and we have shown that one is contained in the other, it follows that both descriptions are equivalent.

iv) From eq. (11.1.1), we want to solve

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 2 & 3 & 5 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

So

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 + 3x_3 + 5x_4 &= 0 \\ x_3 + x_4 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

If we set $\boxed{x_3 = 1}$, we have $\boxed{x_4 = -1}$ through the second equation. Then our first equation becomes

$$x_1 + 2x_2 = 2$$

Setting $\boxed{x_2 = 1}$ implies $\boxed{x_1 = 0}$ so the first vector in our nullspace is $\boxed{\langle 0,1,1,-1\rangle}$. Similarly setting $\boxed{x_1 - 2}$ implies that $\boxed{x_2 = 0}$ so the next vector in our nullspace is $\boxed{\langle 2,0,1,-1\rangle}$. So

$$\operatorname{null}\left(A\right) = \operatorname{span}\left\{\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}\right\}$$

To show that this is indeed the nullspace of A pick any $\vec{\mathbf{v}} \in \operatorname{null}\left(A\right)$. So $\vec{\mathbf{v}} = x\left\langle 0,1,1,-1,\right\rangle + y\left\langle 2,0,1-1\right\rangle$ for some $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$. So $\vec{\mathbf{v}} = \langle 2y, x, x+y, -x-y\rangle$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} A\vec{\mathbf{v}} &= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 5 \\ 2 & 4 & 8 & 12 \\ 3 & 6 & 7 & 13 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 2y \\ x \\ x+y \\ -x-y \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 2y + 2x + 3(x+y) + 5(-x-y) \\ 4y + 4x8\left(x+y\right) + 12\left(-x-y\right) \\ 6y + 6x + 7\left(x+y\right) + 13\left(-x-y\right) \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

v) From **(iii)**, we know that output space is the span of the pivot columns and from **(iv)**, we have a description of the null space. So if $\vec{\mathbf{b}} = s\left\langle 1,2,3\right\rangle + t\left\langle 3,8,7\right\rangle$. Then the $\vec{\mathbf{x}}$ that solves $A\vec{\mathbf{x}} = \vec{\mathbf{b}}$ is precisely of the form

$$\vec{\mathbf{x}} = \begin{bmatrix} s+2v \\ u \\ t+u+v \\ -u-v \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{for all } u, v \in \mathbb{R}.$$

vi) Clearly the vector $\langle 0,6,-6\rangle$ is a member of the output space since it solves $b_2 + b_3 - 5b_1 = 0$.

●

12 The Einstein Summation Convention

Although this topic is normally outside the scope of a first-year course in linear algebra, this is as good a time as any to begin planting the seeds for understanding tensors. This chapter may be skipped on a first reading.

§12.1 Repeated Indices in Sums

We begin with the familiar definition of the dot product:

$$\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_j x_j := a_1 x_1 + a_2 x_2 + \cdots + a_n x_n.$$

However, if the limits of the sum and the range of indices are clear from context, then writing out the summation symbol provides little additional information. Thus, in many areas of mathematics and physics, we adopt the following convention:

$$a_j x_j := \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_j x_j.$$

This is known as the **Einstein summation convention**: whenever an index variable appears exactly twice in a single term, it is understood to be summed over.

This not only saves notation, but also prepares us to work with more complex indexed expressions, especially when dealing with tensors in differential geometry, general relativity, or continuum mechanics.

Definition 12.1.1.
In an indexed expression, an index is called a **dummy index** (or **summation index**) if it appears exactly twice in a single term and is implicitly summed over by the Einstein summation convention.

An index is called a **free index** if it is not summed over and appears exactly once in each term of an equation. Free indices determine the components of the resulting expression and must match on both sides of an equation.

Some immediate consequences of the above definition are:

i) $a_{ij} x_j \neq a_{kj} x_j$ because $i \neq k$

ii) No index can appear three or more times in an expression.

Example 12.1.1.
Suppose $n = 4$. Consider the expressions $a_{ii} x_k$ and $a_{ij} x_j$. By the Einstein summation convention, we interpret:

$$a_{ii} x_k = a_{11} x_k + a_{22} x_k + a_{33} x_k + a_{44} x_k,$$

since the repeated index i is implicitly summed over, while k remains a free index.

Similarly,

$$a_{ij} x_j = a_{i1} x_1 + a_{i2} x_2 + a_{i3} x_3 + a_{i4} x_4,$$

where the index j is summed over and i is free.

Example 12.1.2.
If $n = 3$, write down the equations represented by $y_i = a_{ij} x_j$.
Since j is the summation index, we have

$$y_i = a_{i1} x_1 + a_{i2} x_2 + a_{i3} x_3$$

which in turn become the equations

$$\begin{aligned} y_1 &= a_{11} x_1 + a_{12} x_2 + a_{13} x_3 \\ y_2 &= a_{21} x_1 + a_{22} x_2 + a_{23} x_3 \\ y_3 &= a_{31} x_1 + a_{32} x_2 + a_{33} x_3 \end{aligned}$$

§12.1.1 Double Sums

Suppose we wish to substitute $y_i = a_{ij}x_j$ into the expression $Q = b_{ij}y_ix_j$. A careless substitution yields:

$$Q = b_{ij}a_{ij}x_jx_j,$$

which is problematic: the index j appears **four** times on the right-hand side, violating the rules of summation convention. Recall that a dummy index should appear exactly twice—once per term being summed over.

To remedy this, we take advantage of the fact that dummy indices are arbitrary labels. We can safely rename one pair of repeated j indices to a new label, say k. Here's the general procedure:

i) Identify the overused dummy index. In this case, j appears too many times:

$$y_i = a_{ij}x_j, \qquad Q = b_{ij}y_ix_j.$$

ii) Rename one pair of the repeated j's using a new index (e.g., k):

$$y_i = a_{ik}x_k, \qquad Q = b_{ij}y_ix_j.$$

iii) Now the substitution is well-formed:

$$Q = b_{ij}a_{ik}x_kx_j.$$

Example 12.1.3.
If $n = 3$, write out explicitly the equation given by

$$Q = b_{ij}a_{ik}x_kx_j.$$

First, sum over the k index:

$$Q = b_{ij}(a_{i1}x_1 + a_{i2}x_2 + a_{i3}x_3)x_j = b_{ij}a_{i1}x_1x_j + b_{ij}a_{i2}x_2x_j + b_{ij}a_{i3}x_3x_j.$$

Now sum over the j index:

$$\begin{aligned} Q = b_{i1}a_{i1}x_1x_1 &+ b_{i2}a_{i1}x_1x_2 + b_{i3}a_{i1}x_1x_3 \\ &+ b_{i1}a_{i2}x_2x_1 + b_{i2}a_{i2}x_2x_2 + b_{i3}a_{i2}x_2x_3 \\ &+ b_{i1}a_{i3}x_3x_1 + b_{i2}a_{i3}x_3x_2 + b_{i3}a_{i3}x_3x_3. \end{aligned}$$

Finally, expand over i:

$$\begin{aligned} Q = b_{11}a_{11}x_1x_1 &+ b_{12}a_{11}x_1x_2 + b_{13}a_{11}x_1x_3 + b_{11}a_{12}x_2x_1 + b_{12}a_{12}x_2x_2 + b_{13}a_{12}x_2x_3 + b_{11}a_{13}x_3x_1 + b_{12}a_{13}x_3x_2 + b_{13}a_{13}x_3x_3 \\ &+ b_{21}a_{21}x_1x_1 + b_{22}a_{21}x_1x_2 + b_{23}a_{21}x_1x_3 + b_{21}a_{22}x_2x_1 + b_{22}a_{22}x_2x_2 + b_{23}a_{22}x_2x_3 + b_{21}a_{23}x_3x_1 + b_{22}a_{23}x_3x_2 + b_{23}a_{23}x_3x_3 \\ &+ b_{31}a_{31}x_1x_1 + b_{32}a_{31}x_1x_2 + b_{33}a_{31}x_1x_3 + b_{31}a_{32}x_2x_1 + b_{32}a_{32}x_2x_2 + b_{33}a_{32}x_2x_3 + b_{31}a_{33}x_3x_1 + b_{32}a_{33}x_3x_2 + b_{33}a_{33}x_3x_3. \end{aligned}$$

This expansion shows how rapidly the number of terms grows. The compact form

$$Q = b_{ij}a_{ik}x_kx_j$$

is far more efficient.

Example 12.1.4.
Suppose $y_i = a_{ik}x_k$, and we wish to compute

$$Q = g_{ij}y_iy_j.$$

If we substitute directly, we get:

$$Q = g_{ij}(a_{ik}x_k)(a_{jk}x_k),$$

which is invalid since the index k appears four times.

We fix this by renaming one of the repeated k's:

$$Q = g_{ij}(a_{ik}x_k)(a_{jm}x_m),$$

which now respects the summation convention.

§12.1.2 Kronecker Delta and Algebraic Rules

Definition 12.1.2.
The **Kronecker delta** is the tensor defined by

$$\delta_{ij} = \delta^i_j = \delta^{ij} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } i = j, \\ 0 & \text{if } i \neq j. \end{cases}$$

Multivariable Calculus

13 Functions of Several Variables 73
13.1 $\mathbb{R}^3$ 73
13.1.1 Lines in $\mathbb{R}^3$ 73

14 Differentiation 75
14.1 Partial Derivatives 75
14.2 Maximum and Minimum Values 75
14.3 Lagrange Multipliers 75

15 Multiple Integration 81
15.1 Change of Variables 81
15.1.1 Two Variable Case 81
15.1.2 Three Variable Case 82

16 Vector Analysis 85

17 Integrals Over Curves and Surfaces 86
17.1 Line Integrals 86

18 Vector Analysis Integration Theorems 88
18.1 Green's Theorem 88
18.2 Stokes' Theorem 89
18.3 Divergence Theorem 89

13 Functions of Several Variables

In single-variable calculus, we studied functions that take a single real input and produce a single real output. Our geometric intuition was built around this setting: the derivative represented the slope of a curve in the plane, and the integral represented the area under that curve. In multivariable calculus, we now consider functions of several real inputs and possibly several real outputs. In this broader setting, our earlier visual intuition of slope and area begins to break down. As such, we need to reinterpret the notions of derivative and integral to make sense in higher dimensions.

The good news is that while single-variable functions only map the real line to itself, offering limited geometric complexity, multivariable functions map between higher-dimensional spaces such as the plane or 3-dimensional space. These richer domains and codomains allow us to explore more interesting geometric behavior. We can now ask: what kinds of geometric information do these functions encode? What does "change" or "accumulation" mean in higher-dimensional settings?

§13.1 $\mathbb{R}^3$

§13.1.1 Lines in $\mathbb{R}^3$

If we are given a point $P = (p_1, p_2, p_3)$ and a direction $\vec{\mathbf{v}} = \langle v_1, v_2, v_3\rangle$, then we can form a line that contains P traveling in the direction of $\mathbf{v}$ by

$$L(t) = P + \vec{\mathbf{v}}t = (p_1 + v_1 t, p_2 + v_2 t, p_3 + v_3 t)$$

or

$$L = \begin{cases} x = p_1 + v_1 t \\ y = p_2 + v_2 t \\ z = p_3 + v_3 t \end{cases}$$

If we solve for t, we get the following equality

$$\frac{x - p_1}{v_1} = \frac{y - p_2}{v_2} = \frac{z - p_3}{v_3}$$

If any component of $\vec{\mathbf{v}}$ is 0, then we just omit its mention in the above equation since L would not change in that respective direction.

Exercise 13.1.1.
Suppose that L is the line that contains the points $P = (-3, -1, 2)$ and $Q = (5, 8, 4)$. Where does L pierce the xy-plane?

Solution.
First, we need to find the direction vector $\vec{\mathbf{PQ}}$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} \vec{\mathbf{PQ}} &= \langle 5 + 3, 8 + 1, 4 - 2\rangle \\ &= \langle 8, 9, 2\rangle \end{aligned}$$

Using the symmetric equations for a line, we have to find the $(x, y, 0)$ on L. Solving for z, we have

$$\frac{0 - 2}{2} = -1$$

so

$$\frac{x + 3}{8} = -1 \implies x = -11$$

and

$$\frac{y + 1}{9} = -1 \implies y = -10$$

To check that we have the correct answer, let use Q in the symmetric equations

$$\frac{0 - 4}{2} = -2$$

so

$$\frac{x - 5}{8} = -2 \implies x = -11$$

and

$$\frac{y-8}{9} = -2 \Longrightarrow y = -10$$

so L pierces the xy-plane at

$$\boxed{(-11, -10, 0)}$$

●

14 Differentiation

§14.1 Partial Derivatives

Definition 14.1.1.
Suppose that $f : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$. Then $\frac{\partial f}{\partial x_1}, \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_2}, \ldots, \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_n}$ denote the **partial derivatives** with respect to the first, second, ..., n-th variables, if they exist. The k-th partial derivative exists if the following limit exists and is finite:

$$\lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_k + h, \ldots, x_n) - f(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)}{h}.$$

Or equivalently,

$$\lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(\mathbf{x} + h \cdot \mathbf{e}_j) - f(\mathbf{x})}{h}$$

§14.2 Maximum and Minimum Values

§14.3 Lagrange Multipliers

Example 14.3.1.
Find the extreme values of the function $f(x, y) = x^2 + 2y^2$ over the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 1$.

We apply the method of Lagrange multipliers the functions $f(x, y) = x^2 + 2y^2$, $g(x, y) = x^2 + y^2$to get

$$2x = \lambda \cdot 2x, \quad 4y = \lambda \cdot 2y.$$

Now if $\lambda = 1$ to resolve the equation $2x = \lambda \cdot 2x$. Then the second equation must have $y = 0$. Applying this to the constraint equation gives us the points $\boxed{(x, y) = (1, 0)}$ and $\boxed{(x, y) = (-1, 0)}$ as our first two candidates for critical points. Conversely, if $\lambda = 2$ to resolve the second equation, then $x = 0$. As such, our second pair of candidates are $\boxed{(x, y) = (0, 1)}$ and $\boxed{(x, y) = (0, -1)}$. Substituting our candidates into $f(x, y)$, we get

$$\begin{aligned} f(-1, 0) &= 1 \\ f(1, 0) &= 1 \\ f(0, -1) &= 2 \\ f(0, 1) &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

So over the unit-circle, f attains its maximum at $\boxed{(x, y) = (0, 1)}$ and $\boxed{(x, y) = (0, -1)}$ and its minimum at $\boxed{(x, y) = (1, 0)}$ and $\boxed{(x, y) = (-1, 0)}$.
Now parametrize $f(x, y)$ by θ with $x = \cos(\theta)$ and $y = \sin(\theta)$ and compare this problem with Example 3.1.1

Exercise 14.3.1.
Suppose that you are give 12 square feet of cardboard and asked to make a box without a lid. What is the maximum volume of such a box? What are the dimensions?

Solution.
Let x and y denote the dimensions of the base and z denote the height of the box. Then we wish to solve the optimization problem

$$\begin{aligned} \text{maximize:} \quad & f(x, y, z) = xyz \\ \text{subject to:} \quad & g(x, y, z) = xy + 2xz + 2yz - 12 = 0 \\ & x, y, z > 0 \end{aligned}$$

Applying the method of Lagrange multipliers, we need $\nabla f = \lambda \nabla g$, which gives us the system

$$yz = \lambda(y + 2z) \tag{14.3.1}$$

$$xz = \lambda(x + 2z) \tag{14.3.2}$$

$$xy = \lambda(2x + 2y) \tag{14.3.3}$$

Since we're looking for a maximum in the interior of the domain where $x, y, z > 0$, and since $\nabla g \neq 0$ at any feasible point, we know that $\lambda \neq 0$.

Multiplying Equation (14.3.1) by x and Equation (14.3.2) by y, we get

$$xyz = \lambda(xy + 2xz) \quad \text{and} \quad xyz = \lambda(xy + 2yz)$$

Since both expressions equal xyz, we have:

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda(xy + 2xz) &= \lambda(xy + 2yz) \\ xy + 2xz &= xy + 2yz && \text{(since } \lambda \neq 0\text{)} \\ 2xz &= 2yz \\ x &= y && \text{(since } z > 0\text{)} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, $\boxed{x = y}$.

Substituting this result into Equation (14.3.3), we have

$$x^2 = \lambda(2x + 2x) = 4\lambda x$$

Since $x > 0$, we can divide by x to get $\boxed{x = 4\lambda}$.

Substituting $x = y = 4\lambda$ into Equation (14.3.2), we have

$$(4\lambda)z = \lambda(4\lambda + 2z)$$

$$4\lambda z = \lambda(4\lambda + 2z)$$

$$\begin{aligned} 4z &= 4\lambda + 2z && \text{(since } \lambda \neq 0\text{)} \\ 2z &= 4\lambda \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{z = 2\lambda}$$

Now that we have expressions for x, y, z in terms of λ, we can solve for λ using the constraint equation:

$$\begin{aligned} 12 &= xy + 2xz + 2yz \\ &= (4\lambda)(4\lambda) + 2(4\lambda)(2\lambda) + 2(4\lambda)(2\lambda) \\ &= 16\lambda^2 + 16\lambda^2 + 16\lambda^2 \\ &= 48\lambda^2 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, $48\lambda^2 = 12$, which gives us $\lambda^2 = \frac{1}{4}$. Since we need $\lambda > 0$ (as the constraint gradient and objective gradient point in the same direction at the maximum), we have $\lambda = \frac{1}{2}$.

Substituting this into our expressions for x, y, z, we get:

$$\boxed{x = 4 \cdot \frac{1}{2} = 2}$$

$$\boxed{y = 4 \cdot \frac{1}{2} = 2}$$

$$\boxed{z = 2 \cdot \frac{1}{2} = 1}$$

This gives us a maximum volume of $\boxed{\text{Volume } = xyz = 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 1 = 4 \text{ cubic feet}}$.

Exercise 14.3.2.
What are the points on the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 4$ that are closest and furthest from the point $(x, y, z) = (3, 1, -1)$?

Solution.
The distance from a point (x, y, z) to the point $(3, 1, -1)$ is given by

$$d(x, y, z) = \sqrt{(x-3)^2 + (y-1)^2 + (z+1)^2}.$$

However, we can make our lives easier by choosing to optimize $f(x, y, z) = (d(x, y, z))^2$ since extremizing the distance is equivalent to extremizing the squared distance. So our problem is:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{extremize:} \quad & f(x, y, z) = (x-3)^2 + (y-1)^2 + (z+1)^2 \\ \text{subject to:} \quad & g(x, y, z) = x^2 + y^2 + z^2 - 4 = 0 \end{aligned}$$

Through Lagrange multipliers, we have $\nabla f = \lambda \nabla g$ which becomes the system:

$$\begin{aligned} 2(x-3) &= 2\lambda x \\ 2(y-1) &= 2\lambda y \\ 2(z+1) &= 2\lambda z \end{aligned}$$

Dividing by 2 and rearranging each equation:

$$\begin{aligned} x - 3 = \lambda x &\implies x(1-\lambda) = 3 \\ y - 1 = \lambda y &\implies y(1-\lambda) = 1 \\ z + 1 = \lambda z &\implies z(1-\lambda) = -1 \end{aligned}$$

If $\lambda = 1$, then the above three equations are absurd, so we can assume $\lambda \neq 1$. Therefore:

$$\boxed{x = \frac{3}{1-\lambda}, \quad y = \frac{1}{1-\lambda}, \quad z = -\frac{1}{1-\lambda}}$$

We can now substitute these expressions into the constraint:

$$\begin{aligned} 4 &= x^2 + y^2 + z^2 \\ 4 &= \left(\frac{3}{1-\lambda}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{1}{1-\lambda}\right)^2 + \left(-\frac{1}{1-\lambda}\right)^2 \\ 4 &= \frac{9+1+1}{(1-\lambda)^2} \\ 4(1-\lambda)^2 &= 11 \\ (1-\lambda)^2 &= \frac{11}{4} \\ 1 - \lambda &= \pm\frac{\sqrt{11}}{2} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore: $\lambda = 1 \pm \frac{\sqrt{11}}{2}$, giving us $\lambda_1 = 1 - \frac{\sqrt{11}}{2}$ and $\lambda_2 = 1 + \frac{\sqrt{11}}{2}$.

For $\lambda_1 = 1 - \frac{\sqrt{11}}{2}$:

$$\begin{aligned} 1 - \lambda_1 &= \frac{\sqrt{11}}{2} \\ x &= \frac{3}{\sqrt{11}/2} = \frac{6}{\sqrt{11}} = \frac{6\sqrt{11}}{11} \\ y &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{11}/2} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{11}} = \frac{2\sqrt{11}}{11} \\ z &= \frac{-1}{\sqrt{11}/2} = \frac{-2}{\sqrt{11}} = -\frac{2\sqrt{11}}{11} \end{aligned}$$

This gives us the point $P_1 = \left(\frac{6\sqrt{11}}{11}, \frac{2\sqrt{11}}{11}, -\frac{2\sqrt{11}}{11}\right)$.

For $\lambda_2 = 1 + \frac{\sqrt{11}}{2}$:

$$\begin{aligned} 1 - \lambda_2 &= -\frac{\sqrt{11}}{2} \\ x &= \frac{3}{-\sqrt{11}/2} = -\frac{6}{\sqrt{11}} = -\frac{6\sqrt{11}}{11} \\ y &= \frac{1}{-\sqrt{11}/2} = -\frac{2}{\sqrt{11}} = -\frac{2\sqrt{11}}{11} \\ z &= \frac{-1}{-\sqrt{11}/2} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{11}} = \frac{2\sqrt{11}}{11} \end{aligned}$$

This gives us the point $P_2 = \left(-\frac{6\sqrt{11}}{11}, -\frac{2\sqrt{11}}{11}, \frac{2\sqrt{11}}{11}\right)$.

To determine which point is closest and which is furthest, we compute the squared distances:
For P_1:

$$\begin{aligned} f(P_1) &= \left(\frac{6\sqrt{11}}{11} - 3\right)^2 + \left(\frac{2\sqrt{11}}{11} - 1\right)^2 + \left(-\frac{2\sqrt{11}}{11} + 1\right)^2 \\ &= \frac{1}{121}\left[(6\sqrt{11} - 33)^2 + (2\sqrt{11} - 11)^2 + (11 - 2\sqrt{11})^2\right] \\ &= \frac{1}{121} \cdot 4(11 - 6\sqrt{11} + 121 - 22\sqrt{11} + 121) \\ &= 4 - 2\sqrt{11} \end{aligned}$$

For P_2:

$$\begin{aligned} f(P_2) &= \left(-\frac{6\sqrt{11}}{11} - 3\right)^2 + \left(-\frac{2\sqrt{11}}{11} - 1\right)^2 + \left(\frac{2\sqrt{11}}{11} + 1\right)^2 \\ &= 4 + 2\sqrt{11} \end{aligned}$$

Since $\sqrt{11} > 0$, we have $f(P_1) < f(P_2)$.
Therefore:

- The **closest** point is $\boxed{\left(\frac{6\sqrt{11}}{11}, \frac{2\sqrt{11}}{11}, -\frac{2\sqrt{11}}{11}\right)}$

- The **furthest** point is $\boxed{\left(-\frac{6\sqrt{11}}{11}, -\frac{2\sqrt{11}}{11}, \frac{2\sqrt{11}}{11}\right)}$

Note: Geometrically, these points lie on the line passing through the center of the sphere $(0, 0, 0)$ and the external point $(3, 1, -1)$, which explains why they represent the closest and furthest points on the sphere. (Compare this approach to the one shown in Example 9.1.2.) ●

Exercise 14.3.3.
Let $S = \left\{\vec{\mathbf{v}} \in \mathbb{R}^2 \;\middle|\; \vec{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \langle 1, 2\rangle = 5\right\}$. What is the shortest vector in S?

Solution.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{minimize: } f(x, y) &= x^2 + y^2 \\ \text{subject to: } g(x, y) &= x + 2y - 5 = 0 \end{aligned}$$

This gives

$$\begin{aligned} 2x = \lambda &\implies x = \frac{\lambda}{2} \\ 2y = 2\lambda &\implies y = \lambda \end{aligned}$$

Substituting this into our constraint, we get

$$\frac{\lambda}{2} + 2\lambda = 5 \implies \lambda = 2$$

Therefore $\boxed{\langle v, y\rangle = \langle 1, 2\rangle}$ is the vector in S of minimal length. ●

Exercise 14.3.4.
Let $\vec{\mathbf{v}} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ and $c \in \mathbb{R}$ be fixed and non-zero. Define $S = \left\{\vec{\mathbf{x}} \in \mathbb{R}^n \;\middle|\; \vec{\mathbf{x}} \cdot \vec{\mathbf{v}} = c\right\}$ find the vector in S with the shortest length.

Solution.
Suppose that $\vec{\mathbf{x}} = \langle x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n\rangle$ and $\vec{\mathbf{v}} = \langle v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\rangle$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \text{minimize: } f(\vec{\mathbf{x}}) &= \sum_{k=1}^{n} (x_k)^2 \\ \text{subject to: } g(\vec{\mathbf{x}}) &= \left(\sum_{k=1}^{n} v_k x_k\right) - c = 0 \end{aligned}$$

So for any $1 \le k \le n$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_k} &= \lambda \frac{\partial g}{\partial x_k} \\ 2x_k &= \lambda v_k \\ x_k &= \frac{\lambda v_k}{2} \end{aligned}$$

Substituting this into our constraint, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k=1}^{n} v_k \left(\frac{\lambda v_k}{2}\right) &= c \\
\frac{\lambda}{2} \sum_{k=1}^{n} \left(v_k\right)^2 &= c \\
\lambda \frac{||\vec{\mathbf{v}}||^2}{2} &= c \\
\lambda &= \frac{2c}{||\vec{\mathbf{v}}||^2}
\end{aligned}$$

So

$$x_k = \frac{1}{2} \frac{2c}{||\vec{\mathbf{v}}||^2} v_k \implies \frac{c}{||\vec{\mathbf{v}}||^2} v_k$$

So the minimal element of S is

$$\boxed{\frac{c}{||\vec{\mathbf{v}}||^2} \vec{\mathbf{v}}}$$

●

15 Multiple Integration

§15.1 Change of Variables

§15.1.1 Two Variable Case

Definition 15.1.1.
Let $T : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^2$ be a transformation defined by

$$x = \mathbf{x}(u, v), \quad y = \mathbf{y}(u, v),$$

where both $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{y}$ are of class $\mathcal{C}^1$ with respect to the variables u and v.
The **Jacobian determinant** of T, denoted by $\left|\frac{\partial(x, y)}{\partial(u, v)}\right|$, is the absolute value of the determinant (orientation is irrelevant for our purposes) of the derivative matrix $\mathbf{D}[T(u, v)]$. That is,

$$\left|\frac{\partial(x, y)}{\partial(u, v)}\right| = \begin{vmatrix} \frac{\partial x}{\partial u} & \frac{\partial x}{\partial v} \\ \frac{\partial y}{\partial u} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial v} \end{vmatrix}.$$

Example 15.1.1.
Suppose P is the parallelogram bounded by $y = 2x$, $y = 2x - 2$, $y = x$, and $y = x + 1$. Evaluate $\int\int_P xy \, dx \, dy$.
The easiest type of surface to integrate over is a rectangle. With that in mind, notice that

$$y - 2x = 0 \quad y - 2x = -2$$

and

$$y - x = 0 \quad y - x = 1$$

lend themselves to a nice substitution of

$$u = y - 2x \quad v = y - x.$$

Now to find x and y in terms of u and v, notice that

$$v - u = (y - x) - (y - 2x)$$

or

$$\boxed{x = v - u}.$$

Back-substitution gives us

$$v = y - x \Rightarrow v = y - (v - u) \Rightarrow \boxed{y = 2v - u}.$$

By construction, our limits of integration are

$$-2 \leq u \leq 0, \quad 0 \leq v \leq 1.$$

The Jacobian determinant then becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \left|\frac{\partial(x, y)}{\partial(u, v)}\right| &= \begin{vmatrix} \frac{\partial x}{\partial u} & \frac{\partial x}{\partial v} \\ \frac{\partial y}{\partial u} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial v} \end{vmatrix} \\ &= \begin{vmatrix} \frac{\partial}{\partial u}(v - u) & \frac{\partial}{\partial v}(v - u) \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial u}(2v - u) & \frac{\partial}{\partial v}(2v - u) \end{vmatrix} \\ &= \begin{vmatrix} -1 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 \end{vmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

So

$$\boxed{\left|\frac{\partial(x,y)}{\partial(u,v)}\right| = 1}$$

With everything in place, we are now ready to evaluate

$$\begin{aligned}
\int\int_P xy\,\mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}y &= \int\int_{P^*} \mathbf{x}(u,v)\,\mathbf{y}(u,v)\left|\frac{\partial(x,y)}{\partial(u,v)}\right|\mathrm{d}u\,\mathrm{d}v \\
&= \int_0^1\int_{-2}^0 (v-u)(2v-u)\,\mathrm{d}u\,\mathrm{d}v \\
&= \int_0^1\int_{-2}^0 2v^2 - 3vu + u^2\,\mathrm{d}u\,\mathrm{d}v \\
&= \int_0^1 \left(2v^2u - \frac{3}{2}vu^2 + \frac{u^3}{3}\Big|_{-2}^0\right)\mathrm{d}v \\
&= \int_0^1 4v^2 + 6v + \frac{8}{3}\,\mathrm{d}v \\
&= \frac{4}{3}v^3 + 3v^2 + \frac{8}{3}v\Big|_0^1 \\
&= 7
\end{aligned}$$

So

$$\boxed{\int\int_P xy\,\mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}y = 7}.$$

§15.1.2 Three Variable Case

Definition 15.1.2.
Let $T : \mathbb{R}^3 \to \mathbb{R}^3$ be a transformation defined by

$$x = \mathbf{x}(u,v,w), \quad y = \mathbf{y}(u,v,w), \quad z = \mathbf{z}(u,v,w)$$

where **x**, **y**, and **z** are of class $\mathcal{C}^1$ with respect to u, v and w. The Jacobian determinant of T is denoted by $\left|\frac{\partial(x,y,z)}{\partial(u,v,w)}\right|$ and is similarly defined to be

$$\left|\frac{\partial(x,y,z)}{\partial(u,v,w)}\right| = \begin{vmatrix} \frac{\partial x}{\partial u} & \frac{\partial x}{\partial v} & \frac{\partial x}{\partial w} \\ \frac{\partial y}{\partial u} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial v} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial w} \\ \frac{\partial z}{\partial u} & \frac{\partial z}{\partial v} & \frac{\partial z}{\partial w} \end{vmatrix}.$$

Example 15.1.2.
Calculate the Jacobian determinant for cylindrical coordinates.
We have

$$x = r\cos(\theta), \quad y = r\sin(\theta), \quad z = z$$

So

$$\left|\frac{\partial(x,y,z)}{\partial(r,\theta,z)}\right| = \begin{vmatrix} \frac{\partial x}{\partial r} & \frac{\partial x}{\partial \theta} & \frac{\partial x}{\partial z} \\ \frac{\partial y}{\partial r} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial \theta} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial z} \\ \frac{\partial z}{\partial r} & \frac{\partial z}{\partial \theta} & \frac{\partial z}{\partial z} \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} \frac{\partial}{\partial r}(r\cos(\theta)) & \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta}(r\cos(\theta)) & \frac{\partial}{\partial z}(r\cos(\theta)) \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial r}(r\sin(\theta)) & \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta}(r\sin(\theta)) & \frac{\partial}{\partial z}(r\sin(\theta)) \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial r}(z) & \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta}(z) & \frac{\partial}{\partial z}(z) \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} \cos(\theta) & -r\sin(\theta) & 0 \\ \sin(\theta) & r\cos(\theta) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= r$$

This gives us

$$\boxed{\left|\frac{\partial(x,y,z)}{\partial(r,\theta,z)}\right| = r}$$

Example 15.1.3.
Calculate the Jacobian determinant for spherical coordinates.
We have

$$x = \rho\sin(\varphi)\cos(\theta), \quad y = \rho\sin(\varphi)\sin(\theta), \quad z = \rho\cos(\varphi).$$

So

$$\left|\frac{\partial(x,y,z)}{\partial(\rho,\varphi,\theta)}\right| = \begin{vmatrix} \frac{\partial x}{\partial \rho} & \frac{\partial x}{\partial \varphi} & \frac{\partial x}{\partial \theta} \\ \frac{\partial y}{\partial \rho} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial \varphi} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial \theta} \\ \frac{\partial z}{\partial \rho} & \frac{\partial z}{\partial \varphi} & \frac{\partial z}{\partial \theta} \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho}(\rho\sin(\varphi)\cos(\theta)) & \frac{\partial}{\partial \varphi}(\rho\sin(\varphi)\cos(\theta)) & \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta}(\rho\sin(\varphi)\cos(\theta)) \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho}(\rho\sin(\varphi)\sin(\theta)) & \frac{\partial}{\partial \varphi}(\rho\sin(\varphi)\sin(\theta)) & \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta}(\rho\sin(\varphi)\sin(\theta)) \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho}(\rho\cos(\varphi)) & \frac{\partial}{\partial \varphi}(\rho\cos(\varphi)) & \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta}(\rho\cos(\varphi)) \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} \sin(\varphi)\cos(\theta) & \rho\cos(\varphi)\cos(\theta) & -\rho\sin(\varphi)\sin(\theta) \\ \sin(\varphi)\sin(\theta) & \rho\cos(\varphi)\sin(\theta) & \rho\sin(\varphi)\cos(\theta) \\ \cos(\varphi) & -\rho\sin(\varphi) & 0 \end{vmatrix}$$

Unlike the previous example, we elect to explicitly show the determinant calculation here.

$$\begin{aligned}
\begin{vmatrix} \sin(\varphi)\cos(\theta) & \rho\cos(\varphi)\cos(\theta) & -\rho\sin(\varphi)\sin(\theta) \\ \sin(\varphi)\sin(\theta) & \rho\cos(\varphi)\sin(\theta) & \rho\sin(\varphi)\cos(\theta) \\ \cos(\varphi) & -\rho\sin(\varphi) & 0 \end{vmatrix} &= \sin(\varphi)\cos(\theta)\begin{vmatrix} \rho\cos(\varphi)\sin(\theta) & \rho\sin(\varphi)\cos(\theta) \\ -\rho\sin(\varphi) & 0 \end{vmatrix} \\
&- \rho\cos(\varphi)\cos(\theta)\begin{vmatrix} \sin(\varphi)\sin(\theta) & \rho\sin(\varphi)\cos(\theta) \\ \cos(\varphi) & 0 \end{vmatrix} \\
&- \rho\sin(\varphi)\sin(\theta)\begin{vmatrix} \sin(\varphi)\sin(\theta) & \rho\cos(\varphi)\sin(\theta) \\ \cos(\varphi) & -\rho\sin(\varphi) \end{vmatrix} \\
&= \rho^2\sin^3(\varphi)\cos^2(\theta) + \rho^2\cos^2(\varphi)\sin(\varphi)\cos^2(\theta) + \rho^2\sin(\varphi)\sin^2(\theta) \\
&= \rho^2\sin(\varphi)\left(\sin^2(\varphi)\cos^2(\theta) + \cos^2(\varphi)\cos^2(\theta) + \sin^2(\theta)\right) \\
&= \rho^2\sin(\varphi)\left(\left(\sin^2(\varphi) + \cos^2(\varphi)\right)\cos^2(\theta) + \sin^2(\theta)\right) \\
&= \rho^2\sin(\varphi)\left(\cos^2(\theta) + \sin^2(\theta)\right)
\end{aligned}$$

So

$$\boxed{\left|\frac{\partial(x,y,z)}{\partial(\rho,\varphi,\theta)}\right| = \rho^2\sin(\varphi)}.$$

Example 15.1.4.
Evaluate

$$\int\int\int_W \exp\left(x^2+y^2+z^2\right)^{\frac{3}{2}}\,dx\,dy\,dz$$

where W is unit ball in $\mathbb{R}^3$.
This question is *begging* to be integrated in spherical coordinates and we will oblige it.
Set $x^2+y^2+z^2=\rho^2$ and the limits of integration become

$$0 \le \rho \le 1, \quad 0 \le \varphi \le \pi, \quad 0 \le \theta \le 2\pi.$$

This gives us

$$\begin{aligned}
\int\int\int_W \exp\left(x^2+y^2+z^2\right)^{\frac{3}{2}}\,dx\,dy\,dz &= \int_0^1\int_0^\pi\int_0^{2\pi} \exp\left(\rho^2\right)^{\frac{3}{2}}\left|\frac{\partial(x,y,z)}{\partial(\rho,\varphi,\theta)}\right| d\theta\,d\varphi\,d\rho \\
&= \int_0^1\int_0^\pi\int_0^{2\pi} \exp\left(\rho^3\right)\rho^2\sin(\varphi)\,d\theta\,d\varphi\,d\rho \\
&= \int_0^1 \exp\left(\rho^3\right)\rho^2\,d\rho \cdot \int_0^\pi \sin(\varphi)\,d\varphi \cdot \int_0^{2\pi} d\theta \\
&= \frac{1}{3}(e-1)\cdot 2\cdot 2\pi
\end{aligned}$$

So

$$\boxed{\int\int\int_W \exp\left(x^2+y^2+z^2\right)^{\frac{3}{2}}\,dx\,dy\,dz = \frac{4\pi(e-1)}{3}}$$

16 Vector Analysis

17 Integrals Over Curves and Surfaces

§17.1 Line Integrals

Example 17.1.1.
Evaluate the line integral of $\mathbf{F}\langle x, y\rangle = \left(x^4, xy\right)$ along the triangular path with vertices $(0,0)$, $(0,1)$ and $(1,0)$.
We have 3 paths to integrate over

$$\begin{aligned}
\gamma_1(t) &= \langle t, 0\rangle && t \in [0,1]\\
\gamma_2(t) &= \langle 1-t,\ t\rangle && t \in [0,1]\\
\gamma_3(t) &= \langle 0,\ 1-t\rangle && t \in [0,1]
\end{aligned}$$

So we have

$$\begin{aligned}
I_1 &= \int_0^1 \mathbf{F}\left(\gamma_1(t)\right)\cdot\gamma_1'(t)\,\mathrm{d}t\\
&= \int_0^1 \left\langle t^4, (t)(0)\right\rangle\cdot\langle 1, 0\rangle\,\mathrm{d}t\\
&= \int_0^1 t^4\,\mathrm{d}t\\
&= \frac{1}{5}t^5\Big|_0^1
\end{aligned}$$

So

$$\boxed{I_1 = \frac{1}{5}}.$$

Next we have

$$\begin{aligned}
I_2 &= \int_0^1 \mathbf{F}\left(\gamma_2(t)\right)\cdot\gamma_2'(t)\,\mathrm{d}t\\
&= \int_0^1 \left\langle (1-t)^4, t-t^2\right\rangle\cdot\langle -1, 1\rangle\,\mathrm{d}t\\
&= \int_0^1 -(1-t)^4 + t - t^2\,\mathrm{d}t\\
&= \left(\frac{1}{5}(1-t)^5 + \frac{1}{2}t^2 - \frac{1}{3}t^3\right)\Big|_0^1
\end{aligned}$$

So

$$\boxed{I_2 = -\frac{1}{30}}.$$

Finally,

$$\begin{aligned}
I_3 &= \int_0^1 \mathbf{F}\left(\gamma_3(t)\right)\cdot\gamma_3'(t)\,\mathrm{d}t\\
&= \int_0^1 \langle 0, 0\rangle\cdot\langle 0, -1\rangle\,\mathrm{d}t\\
&= \int_0^1 0\,\mathrm{d}t
\end{aligned}$$

So

$$\boxed{I_3 = 0}.$$

Finally, we have

$$\begin{aligned} I &= I_1 + I_2 + I_3 \\ &= \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{30} + 0 \end{aligned}$$

So

$$\boxed{I = \frac{1}{6}}.$$

An easier method of performing this calculation is showcased in Example 18.1.1

18 Vector Analysis Integration Theorems

§18.1 Green's Theorem

Theorem 18.1.1 (Green's theorem).
Let D be a simply connected region in $\mathbb{R}^2$ whose boundary ∂D is a piecewise smooth, simple closed curve oriented counter-clockwise. Let P and Q be continuously differentiable functions on an open set containing $D \cup \partial D$. Then

$$\oint_{\partial D} P\,dx + Q\,dy = \iint_D \left(\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial y}\right) dA.$$

Proof.

∎

Example 18.1.1.
Suppose that D is the triangular region with vertices given by $(0,0)$, $(1,0)$ and $(0,1)$. Apply Green's theorem to $P = x^4$ and $Q = xy$.
We have

$$\begin{aligned}
\oint_{\partial D} P\,dx + Q\,dy &= \iint_D \left(\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial y}\right) dA \\
&= \int_0^1 \int_0^{1-x} \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(xy) - \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(x^4\right) \mathrm{d}y\,\mathrm{d}x \\
&= \int_0^1 \int_0^{1-x} y\,\mathrm{d}y\,\mathrm{d}x \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\int_0^1 y^2\Big|_0^{1-x} \mathrm{d}x \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\int_0^1 (1-x)^2\,\mathrm{d}x \\
&= -\frac{1}{6}(1-x)^3\Big|_0^1
\end{aligned}$$

So

$$\boxed{\oint_{\partial D} P\,dx + Q\,dy = \frac{1}{6}}.$$

Notice that his method is easier than explicitly computing the line integral as shown in Example 17.1.1.

If we know only the boundary of a region, it is natural to ask whether we can compute the area enclosed. Green's theorem provides a direct method.

Recall that the area of a region D is

$$\mathrm{Area}(D) = \iint_D 1\,dA.$$

If we choose functions $P(x,y)$, $Q(x,y)$ such that

$$\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = 1,$$

then Green's theorem tells us

$$\mathrm{Area}(D) = \oint_{\partial D} P\,dx + Q\,dy.$$

For instance, taking $P = 0$, $Q = x$ yields

$$\mathrm{Area}(D) = \oint_{\partial D} x\,dy,$$

while taking $P = -y$, $Q = 0$ gives

$$\mathrm{Area}(D) = -\oint_{\partial D} y\,dx.$$

or taking $P = -\frac{1}{2}y$, $Q = \frac{1}{2}x$ yields

$$\text{Area}\,(D) = \frac{1}{2}\oint_{\partial D} x\,\mathrm{d}y - y\,\mathrm{d}x$$

Example 18.1.2.
Calculate the area of an ellipse given by the equation

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

Let E denote the region bounded by the ellipse. Choose $P = -\frac{1}{2}y$, $Q = \frac{1}{2}x$, so that

$$\text{Area}(E) = \oint_{\partial E} P\,dx + Q\,dy = \frac{1}{2}\oint_{\partial E} x\,dy - y\,dx.$$

The ellipse can be parametrized by

$$x = a\cos\theta, \quad y = b\sin\theta, \quad \theta \in [0, 2\pi].$$

Substituting, we obtain

$$\text{Area}(E) = \frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi} \Big(a\cos\theta\, d(b\sin\theta) - b\sin\theta\, d(a\cos\theta)\Big).$$

Simplifying,

$$\text{Area}(E) = \frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi} ab(\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta)\,d\theta = \frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi} ab\,d\theta = \pi ab.$$

Thus the area of the ellipse is

$$\boxed{ab\pi}.$$

§18.2 Stokes' Theorem

Theorem 18.2.1 (Stokes' Theorem)**.**
Let $S \subset \mathbb{R}^3$ be an oriented, piecewise smooth surface with positively oriented, piecewise smooth boundary curve ∂S. Suppose $\mathbf{F} \in \mathcal{C}^1(U;\mathbb{R}^3)$, where $U \subset \mathbb{R}^3$ is open and contains S. Then

$$\iint_S \text{curl}(\mathbf{F}) \cdot \mathrm{d}\mathbf{S} = \iint_S (\nabla \times \mathbf{F}) \cdot \mathrm{d}\mathbf{S} = \oint_{\partial S} \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathrm{d}\mathbf{s}\,.$$

Proof.

■

§18.3 Divergence Theorem

Theorem 18.3.1 (Divergence Theorem)**.**
Suppose that R is a simple solid region with ∂R as the boundary with outward orientation. Suppose that $\mathbf{F} \in \mathcal{C}^1(U;\mathbb{R}^3)$, where $U \subset \mathbb{R}^3$ is open and contains R. Then

$$\iiint_R \text{div}(\mathbf{F})\,\mathrm{d}V = \iiint_R \nabla \cdot \mathbf{F}\,\mathrm{d}V = \iint_{\partial R} \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathrm{d}\mathbf{A}$$

Proof.

■

Ordinary Differential Equations

19 First Order Differential Equations 91
19.1 Linear Equations, Integrating Factors 91

20 Second Order Linear Equations 94
20.1 Homogeneous Equations with Constant Coefficients 94
20.2 The Wronskian 94
20.3 Complex Roots of the Characteristic Equation 94
20.4 Repeated Roots and Reduction of Order 97

19 First Order Differential Equations

We will deal with differential equations of the form

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}y}{\mathrm{d}t} = f(t, y) \tag{19.0.1}$$

§19.1 Linear Equations, Integrating Factors

Definition 19.1.1.
If f in Equation (19.0.1) is of the form $f(t, y) = p(t)y + g(t)$, we call Equation (19.0.1) a **first-order linear equation**.

Observe that this is equivalent to the form

$$P(t)\frac{\mathrm{d}y}{\mathrm{d}t} + Q(t)y = G(t), \quad P(t) \neq 0, \tag{19.1.1}$$

which can always be rewritten in the form of Equation (19.0.1) by dividing both sides by $P(t)$.

Exercise 19.1.1.
Solve the differential equation

$$\left(\sin\left(t^2\right) + 2\right)\frac{\mathrm{d}y}{\mathrm{d}t} + \left(2t\cos\left(t^2\right)\right)y = 6t^2. \tag{19.1.2}$$

Solution.
We observe that the left-hand side is the derivative of a product:

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\left[\left(\sin\left(t^2\right) + 2\right)y\right] = 6t^2.$$

Integrating both sides, we obtain

$$\int \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\left[\left(\sin\left(t^2\right) + 2\right)y\right]\mathrm{d}t = \int 6t^2\,\mathrm{d}t,$$

which gives

$$\left(\sin\left(t^2\right) + 2\right)y = 2t^3 + C.$$

Solving for y, we find the general solution:

$$\boxed{y = \frac{2t^3 + C}{\sin\left(t^2\right) + 2}}.$$

●

We can generalize the above procedure. Suppose we are given a differential equation of the form

$$P(t)\frac{\mathrm{d}y}{\mathrm{d}t} + P'(t)y = G(t), \quad P(t) \neq 0.$$

Then the left-hand side is the derivative of $P(t)y$, and we may write

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\left[P(t)y\right] = G(t),$$

so that

$$y = \frac{1}{P(t)}\int G(t)\,\mathrm{d}t.$$

Now consider the general first-order linear equation

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}y}{\mathrm{d}t} + p(t)y = g(t).$$

Unless $p(t) = 0$, we cannot directly apply the previous trick. Instead, we multiply through by a nonzero function $\mu(t)$, chosen so that the left-hand side becomes the derivative of a product:

$$\mu(t)\frac{\mathrm{d}y}{\mathrm{d}t} + \mu(t)p(t)y = \mu(t)g(t),$$

or equivalently,

$$\frac{d}{dt}\left[\mu(t)y\right] = \mu(t)g(t).$$

It is straightforward to verify that setting

$$\mu(t) = e^{\int p(t)dt}$$

achieves this goal. We call $\mu(t)$ the **integrating factor**. In particular, the linear equation becomes

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{dt}\left[e^{\int p(t)dt}y\right] &= e^{\int p(t)dt}g(t)\\
\int \frac{d}{dt}\left[e^{\int p(t)dt}y\right]dt &= \int e^{\int p(t)dt}g(t)\,dt\\
e^{\int p(t)dt}y &= \int e^{\int p(t)dt}g(t)\,dt\\
y &= \frac{1}{e^{\int p(t)dt}}\int e^{\int p(t)dt}g(t)\,dt
\end{aligned}$$

Example 19.1.1.
If we are given the equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} + \frac{1}{2}y = \frac{1}{2}e^{\frac{t}{3}}.$$

Here $p(t) = \frac{1}{2}$ so our integrating factor becomes

$$\mu(t) = e^{\int \frac{1}{2}dt} = e^{\frac{t}{2}+c} = Ce^{\frac{t}{2}}$$

We do not need maximum generality for out integrating factor so we can just pick $C = 1$. Multiplying through with our integrating factor, we get

$$e^{\frac{t}{2}}\frac{dy}{dt} + \frac{1}{2}e^{\frac{t}{2}}y = \frac{1}{2}e^{\frac{t}{3}}e^{\frac{t}{2}}$$

or

$$\frac{d}{dt}\left[e^{\frac{t}{2}}y\right] = \frac{1}{2}e^{\frac{5t}{6}}.$$

Integrating both sides, we have

$$e^{\frac{t}{2}}y = \frac{3}{5}e^{\frac{5t}{6}} + C$$

or

$$\boxed{y = \frac{3}{5}e^{\frac{t}{3}} + Ce^{\frac{-t}{2}}}$$

Now suppose that we want to find the particular solution that goes through the point $(0, 1)$, we would have

$$1 = \frac{3}{5}e^{\frac{0}{3}} + Ce^{\frac{-0}{2}}$$

or

$$1 = \frac{3}{5} + C$$

so $C = \frac{2}{5}$ and the particular solution is

$$\boxed{y = \frac{3}{5}e^{\frac{t}{3}} + \frac{2}{5}e^{\frac{-t}{2}}}$$

Example 19.1.2.
Solve the initial value problem.

$$\begin{aligned}
t\frac{dy}{dt} + 2y &= 4t^2\\
y(1) &= 2
\end{aligned}$$

Dividing every term by t, we have

$$\frac{dy}{dt} + \frac{2}{t}y = 4t$$

Here $p(t) = \dfrac{2}{t}$ so $\mu(t) = e^{\int \frac{2}{t}dt}$ or $\mu(t) = t^2$. So multiplying through by $\mu(t)$, we have

$$t^2\frac{dy}{dt} + 2t = 4t^3$$

or

$$\frac{d}{dt}\left[t^2 y\right] = 4t^3$$

Integrating both sides, we have

$$t^2 y = t^4 + C.$$

Applying the initial condition, we have

$$1^2 \cdot 2 = 1^4 + C \Rightarrow C = 1$$

So

$$\boxed{y = t^2 + \frac{1}{t^2}, \quad t > 0}$$

20 Second Order Linear Equations

§20.1 Homogeneous Equations with Constant Coefficients

§20.2 The Wronskian

§20.3 Complex Roots of the Characteristic Equation

Exercise 20.3.1.
Find the general solution to the differential equation

$$y'' + y' + 9.25y = 0$$

Then find a particular solution with initial conditions $y(0) = 2$ and $y'(0) = 8$.

Solution.
We have the characteristic equation

$$\lambda^2 + \lambda + \frac{37}{4} = 0$$

Hence, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\lambda^2 + \lambda &= -\frac{37}{4} \\
\lambda^2 + \lambda + \frac{1}{4} &= -\frac{37}{4} + \frac{1}{4} \\
\left(\lambda + \frac{1}{2}\right)^2 &= -9 \\
\lambda + \frac{1}{2} &= \pm 3i
\end{aligned}$$

So $\lambda = -\frac{1}{2} \pm 3i$. Letting $\lambda_1 = -\frac{1}{2} + 3i$ and $\lambda_2 = -\frac{1}{2} - 3i$, we have for λ_1

$$\begin{aligned}
y_1(t) &= e^{\left(-\frac{1}{2}+3i\right)t} \\
&= e^{-\frac{1}{2}t} \cdot e^{3it} \\
&= e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(\cos(3t) + i\sin(3t)\right)
\end{aligned}$$

and for $\lambda_2 = -\frac{1}{2} - 3i$

$$\begin{aligned}
y_2(t) &= e^{\left(-\frac{1}{2}-3i\right)t} \\
&= e^{-\frac{1}{2}t} \cdot e^{-3it} \\
&= e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(\cos(-3t) + i\sin(-3t)\right) \\
&= e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(\cos(3t) - i\sin(3t)\right)
\end{aligned}$$

Calculating the Wronskian for $y_1(t) = e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(\cos(3t) + i\sin(3t)\right)$ and $y_2(t) = e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(\cos(3t) - i\sin(3t)\right)$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
W[y_1, y_2](t) &= \det\begin{bmatrix} y_1(t) & y_2(t) \\ y_1'(t) & y_2'(t) \end{bmatrix} \\
&= y_1(t) \cdot y_2'(t) - y_2(t) \cdot y_1'(t) \\
&= \left[e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(\cos(3t) + i\sin(3t)\right)\right] \cdot \left[-\frac{1}{2}e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(\cos(3t) - i\sin(3t)\right) + e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(-3\sin(3t) - 3i\cos(3t)\right)\right] \\
&- \left[e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(\cos(3t) - i\sin(3t)\right)\right] \cdot \left[-\frac{1}{2}e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(\cos(3t) + i\sin(3t)\right) + e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(-3\sin(3t) + 3i\cos(3t)\right)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Now we can set $a(t) = e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(\cos(3t) + i\sin(3t)\right)$, $b(t) = -\frac{1}{2}e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(\cos(3t) - i\sin(3t)\right)$, $c(t) = e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(-3\sin(3t) - 3i\cos(3t)\right)$. So

$$
\begin{aligned}
W[y_1, y_2](t) &= a(t)\left(b(t) + c(t)\right) - \overline{a(t)\left(b(t) + c(t)\right)} \\
&= 2i\,\mathfrak{Im}\left[a(t)\left(b(t) + c(t)\right)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\mathfrak{Im}[z]$ is the imaginary part of a complex number z. If $\mathfrak{Re}[z]$ denotes the real part of z, it can be shown that

$$\mathfrak{Im}[w \cdot z] = \mathfrak{Re}[w]\,\mathfrak{Im}[z] + \mathfrak{Re}[z]\,\mathfrak{Im}[w]$$

and

$$\mathfrak{Im}[w + z] = \mathfrak{Im}[w] + \mathfrak{Im}[z]$$

So

$$
\begin{aligned}
W[y_1, y_2](t) &= 2i\,\mathfrak{Im}\left[a(t)\left(b(t) + c(t)\right)\right] \\
&= 2i\left[\mathfrak{Im}\left(a(t)b(t)\right) + \mathfrak{Im}\left(a(t)c(t)\right)\right] \\
&= 2i\left[\mathfrak{Re}\left(a(t)\right)\mathfrak{Im}\left(b(t)\right) + \mathfrak{Re}\left(b(t)\right)\mathfrak{Im}\left(a(t)\right) + \mathfrak{Re}\left(a(t)\right)\mathfrak{Im}\left(c(t)\right) + \mathfrak{Re}\left(c(t)\right)\mathfrak{Im}\left(a(t)\right)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

We see

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathfrak{Re}[a(t)] &= e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\cos(3t) & \mathfrak{Im}[a(t)] &= e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\sin(3t) \\
\mathfrak{Re}[b(t)] &= -\frac{1}{2}e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\cos(3t) & \mathfrak{Im}[b(t)] &= \frac{1}{2}e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\sin(3t) \\
\mathfrak{Re}[c(t)] &= -3e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\sin(3t) & \mathfrak{Im}[c(t)] &- 3e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\cos(3t)
\end{aligned}
$$

So

$$
\begin{aligned}
W[y_1, y_2](t) &= 2i\left[\mathfrak{Re}\left(a(t)\right)\mathfrak{Im}\left(b(t)\right) + \mathfrak{Re}\left(b(t)\right)\mathfrak{Im}\left(a(t)\right) + \mathfrak{Re}\left(a(t)\right)\mathfrak{Im}\left(c(t)\right) + \mathfrak{Re}\left(c(t)\right)\mathfrak{Im}\left(a(t)\right)\right] \\
&= 2i\left[e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\cos(3t) \cdot \frac{1}{2}e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\sin(3t) - \frac{1}{2}e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\cos(3t)e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\sin(3t)\right. \\
&\left. + e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\cos(3t) \cdot \left(-3e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\cos(3t)\right) + e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\sin(3t) \cdot \left(-3e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\sin(3t)\right)\right] \\
&= 2i\left[\cancel{e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\cos(3t) \cdot \frac{1}{2}e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\sin(3t)} - \cancel{e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\cos(3t) \cdot \frac{1}{2}e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\sin(3t)}\right. \\
&\left. + -3e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(\cos^2(3t)\right) + \sin^2(3t)\right] \\
&= -6ie^{-\frac{1}{2}t}
\end{aligned}
$$

So a general solution is of the form

$$y(t) = K_1\left(e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(\cos(3t) + i\sin(3t)\right)\right) + K_2\left(e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(\cos(3t) - i\sin(3t)\right)\right)$$

for $K_1, K_2 \in \mathbb{C}$. But we need *real solutions*. But since $y(t)$ can be expressed as arbitrary linear combinations of $y_1(t)$ and $y_2(t)$, for any $C_1, C_2 \in \mathbb{R}$, we can pick constants $K_1 = \frac{C_1}{2} - \frac{C_2}{2}i$ and $K_2 = \frac{C_1}{2} + \frac{C_2}{2}i$. This gives us

$$\begin{aligned}
y(t) &= K_1\left(e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(\cos(3t) + i\sin(3t)\right)\right) + K_2\left(e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(\cos(3t) - i\sin(3t)\right)\right) \\
&= \left(\frac{C_1}{2} - \frac{C_2}{2}i\right)e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(\cos(3t) + i\sin(3t)\right) \\
&\quad + \left(\frac{C_1}{2} + \frac{C_2}{2}i\right)e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(\cos(3t) - i\sin(3t)\right) \\
&= e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left[\frac{C_1}{2}\cos(3t) + \frac{C_1}{2}i\sin(3t) - \frac{C_2}{2}i\cos(3t) + \frac{C_2}{2}\sin(3t)\right. \\
&\quad \left. + \frac{C_1}{2}\cos(3t) - \frac{C_1}{2}i\sin(3t) + \frac{C_2}{2}i\cos(3t) + \frac{C_2}{2}\sin(3t)\right] \\
&= e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left[C_1\cos(3t) + C_2\sin(3t)\right]
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the general real solution is

$$y(t) = e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(C_1\cos(3t) + C_2\sin(3t)\right)$$

where $C_1, C_2 \in \mathbb{R}$.

Verification: Let's check that this is indeed a solution to $y'' + y' + 9.25y = 0$. We have

$$y(t) = e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(C_1\cos(3t) + C_2\sin(3t)\right)$$

Using the product rule:

$$\begin{aligned}
y'(t) &= -\frac{1}{2}e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(C_1\cos(3t) + C_2\sin(3t)\right) + e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left(-3C_1\sin(3t) + 3C_2\cos(3t)\right) \\
&= e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left[\left(3C_2 - \frac{1}{2}C_1\right)\cos(3t) + \left(-3C_1 - \frac{1}{2}C_2\right)\sin(3t)\right]
\end{aligned}$$

And for the second derivative:

$$\begin{aligned}
y''(t) &= -\frac{1}{2}e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left[\left(3C_2 - \frac{1}{2}C_1\right)\cos(3t) + \left(-3C_1 - \frac{1}{2}C_2\right)\sin(3t)\right] \\
&\quad + e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left[-3\left(3C_2 - \frac{1}{2}C_1\right)\sin(3t) + 3\left(-3C_1 - \frac{1}{2}C_2\right)\cos(3t)\right] \\
&= e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left[\left(-9C_1 + \frac{3}{4}C_1 - \frac{3}{2}C_2 - \frac{3}{2}C_2\right)\cos(3t)\right. \\
&\quad \left. + \left(-9C_2 + \frac{3}{4}C_2 + \frac{3}{2}C_1 + \frac{3}{2}C_1\right)\sin(3t)\right] \\
&= e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left[\left(3C_1 - \frac{37}{4}C_1 - 3C_2\right)\cos(3t) + \left(3C_2 - \frac{37}{4}C_2 + 3C_1\right)\sin(3t)\right] \\
&= e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left[\left(-\frac{25}{4}C_1 - 3C_2\right)\cos(3t) + \left(3C_1 - \frac{25}{4}C_2\right)\sin(3t)\right]
\end{aligned}$$

Now substituting into the differential equation:

$$\begin{aligned}
&y'' + y' + 9.25y \\
&= e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left[\left(-\frac{25}{4}C_1 - 3C_2\right)\cos(3t) + \left(3C_1 - \frac{25}{4}C_2\right)\sin(3t)\right] \\
&\quad + e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left[\left(3C_2 - \frac{1}{2}C_1\right)\cos(3t) + \left(-3C_1 - \frac{1}{2}C_2\right)\sin(3t)\right] \\
&\quad + \frac{37}{4}e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left[C_1\cos(3t) + C_2\sin(3t)\right] \\
&= e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left[\left(-\frac{25}{4} - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{37}{4}\right)C_1 + (-3+3)C_2\right]\cos(3t) \\
&\quad + e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left[(3-3)C_1 + \left(-\frac{25}{4} - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{37}{4}\right)C_2\right]\sin(3t) \\
&= e^{-\frac{1}{2}t}\left[0 \cdot C_1\cos(3t) + 0 \cdot C_2\sin(3t)\right] = 0 \quad \checkmark
\end{aligned}$$

●

§20.4 Repeated Roots and Reduction of Order

A Second Course in Linear Algebra

The primary resource for this part is [Axl97].

21 Vector Spaces 99
21.1 Definition and Examples of Vector Spaces 99

22 Span, Basis and Dimension 100
22.1 Span and Linear Independence 100

23 Linear Maps 101
23.1 Linear Maps 101
23.2 Duals 104

24 Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors 105
24.1 Invariant Subspaces 105

25 Inner Product Spaces 107
25.1 Inner Products and Norms 107
25.1.1 Norms 109
25.2 Orthonormal Bases 119

26 Symplectic Vector Spaces 120

21 Vector Spaces

§21.1 Definition and Examples of Vector Spaces

Definition 21.1.1.
A **vector space** over a field $\mathbb{K}$ is a set $\mathbf{V}$ with elements called **vectors** such that all of the following criteria are held:

Closure under addition: There is a binary operation called **vector addition** where

$$\begin{aligned} + : \mathbf{V} \times \mathbf{V} &\to \mathbf{V} \\ (\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}) &\mapsto \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}, \end{aligned}$$

Closure under scalar multiplication: There is an operation called **scalar multiplication** where

$$\begin{aligned} \cdot : \mathbb{K} \times \mathbf{V} &\to \mathbf{V} \\ (\lambda, \mathbf{v}) &\mapsto \lambda\mathbf{v}, \end{aligned}$$

Commutativity: $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u}$ for all $\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$.

Associativity: $(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{u} + (\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w})$ and $\alpha(\beta\mathbf{v}) = (\alpha\beta)\mathbf{v}$ for all $\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \in \mathbf{V}$ and $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{K}$.

Distributive Properties: $\alpha(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) = \alpha\mathbf{u} + \alpha\mathbf{v}$ and $(\alpha + \beta)\mathbf{v} = \alpha\mathbf{v} + \beta\mathbf{v}$ for all $\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$ and $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{K}$.

Existence of an Additive Identity: There exists an element $\mathbf{0} \in \mathbf{V}$ called the **additive identity** such that for all $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$, we have $\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{0} = \mathbf{v}$.

Existence of an Additive Inverse: For every $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$, there exists a $\mathbf{w} \in \mathbf{V}$ called the **additive inverse** such that $\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{0}$.

Multiplicative Identity: For $1 \in \mathbb{K}$, we have that $1\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}$ for all $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$.

22 Span, Basis and Dimension

§22.1 Span and Linear Independence

Definition 22.1.1.
Let $\mathbf{V}$ be a vector space over a field $\mathbb{K}$. We say that $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$ is a **linear combination** of $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_n\} \subset \mathbf{V}$ if there exist scalars $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_n \in \mathbb{K}$ such that

$$\mathbf{v} = \sum_{k=1}^{n} \alpha_k \mathbf{v}_k \quad = \quad \alpha_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \alpha_2 \mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + \alpha_n \mathbf{v}_n.$$

The finiteness of the sum is built into the definition: we restrict to finite sums to avoid issues of convergence and to keep linear algebra maximally general and widely applicable.

Definition 22.1.2.
Given $X = \{\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{x}_n\} \subset \mathbf{V}$, we define

$$\operatorname{span}(X) = \operatorname{span}(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{x}_n) = \left\{ \sum_{k=1}^{n} \alpha_k \mathbf{x}_k \,\middle|\, \alpha_k \in \mathbb{K} \right\}.$$

That is, $\operatorname{span}(X)$ is the set of all linear combinations of the vectors in X.

Exercise 22.1.1.
Find a list of four vectors in $\mathbb{K}^3$ whose span equals the set

$$P = \left\{ \langle x, y, z \rangle \in \mathbb{K}^3 \,\middle|\, x + y + z = 0 \right\}$$

Solution.
This is a two dimensional subspace of $\mathbb{K}^3$ so we need to find two vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ that span P and two additional redundancy vectors. We just set

$$\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

and just take any vector $\mathbf{a} = s_1 \mathbf{u} + t_1 \mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{b} = s_2 \mathbf{u} + t_2 \mathbf{v}$ where $s_1, s_2, t_1, t_2 \in \mathbb{K} - \{0\}$ ●

Exercise 22.1.2.
Does $\operatorname{span}(\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3, \mathbf{v}_4) = \operatorname{span}(\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_2 - \mathbf{v}_3, \mathbf{v}_3 - \mathbf{v}_4, \mathbf{v}_4)$?

Solution.
Suppose that $\mathbf{v} \in \operatorname{span}(\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3, \mathbf{v}_4)$. Then $\mathbf{v} = \alpha_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \alpha_2 \mathbf{v}_2 + \alpha_3 \mathbf{v}_3 + \alpha_4 \mathbf{v}_4$ for some $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3, \alpha_4 \in \mathbb{K}$. We want to find scalars $\beta_1, \beta_2, \beta_3, \beta_4 \in \mathbb{K}$ such that $\mathbf{v} = \beta_1(\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2) + \beta_2(\mathbf{v}_2 - \mathbf{v}_3) + \beta_3(\mathbf{v}_3 - \mathbf{v}_4) + \beta_4 \mathbf{v}_4$. Setting

$$\beta_k = \sum_{j \le k} \alpha_j$$

achieves this. So $\operatorname{span}(\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3, \mathbf{v}_4) \subseteq \operatorname{span}(\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_2 - \mathbf{v}_3, \mathbf{v}_3 - \mathbf{v}_4, \mathbf{v}_4)$.
Now suppose that $\mathbf{v} = \beta_1(\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2) + \beta_2(\mathbf{v}_2 - \mathbf{v}_3) + \beta_3(\mathbf{v}_3 - \mathbf{v}_4) + \beta_4 \mathbf{v}_4$ for arbitrary $\beta_1, \beta_2, \beta_3, \beta_4 \in \mathbb{K}$. Then

$$\mathbf{v} = \beta_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + (\beta_2 - \beta_1)\mathbf{v}_2 + (\beta_3 - \beta_2)\mathbf{v}_3 + (\beta_4 - \beta_3)\mathbf{v}_4$$

so $\operatorname{span}(\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_2 - \mathbf{v}_3, \mathbf{v}_3 - \mathbf{v}_4, \mathbf{v}_4) \subseteq \operatorname{span}(\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3, \mathbf{v}_4)$. ●

23 Linear Maps

§23.1 Linear Maps

Definition 23.1.1.
Suppose that $\mathbf{V}$ and $\mathbf{W}$ are vector spaces over the same field $\mathbb{K}$. The **linear map** is a map $T : \mathbf{V} \to \mathbf{W}$ such that

i) $T(\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2) = T(\mathbf{v}_1) + T(\mathbf{v}_2)$ for all $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2 \in \mathbf{V}$.

ii) $T(\lambda \mathbf{v}) = \lambda T(\mathbf{v})$ for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{K}$ and $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$.

The set of linear maps from $\mathbf{V}$ to $\mathbf{W}$ is denoted by $\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V}, \mathbf{W})$. In the case that the codomain is the same as the domain, ($T : \mathbf{V} \to \mathbf{V}$), we sometimes call such a linear map a **linear operator** and we denote the set of linear operators on a vector space $\mathbf{V}$ as $\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V})$.

Lemma 23.1.1.
Let $\mathbf{V}$ and $\mathbf{W}$ be vector spaces and $T \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V}, \mathbf{W})$. T maps the additive identity of $\mathbf{V}$ to the additive identity of $\mathbf{W}$; that is,

$$T(\mathbf{0}_\mathbf{V}) = \mathbf{0}_\mathbf{W}$$

Proof.

$$\begin{aligned} T(\mathbf{0}_\mathbf{V}) &= T(\mathbf{0}_\mathbf{V} + \mathbf{0}_\mathbf{V}) \\ &= T(\mathbf{0}_\mathbf{V}) + T(\mathbf{0}_\mathbf{V}) \end{aligned}$$

So $T(\mathbf{0}_\mathbf{V})$ is the additive identity for $\mathbf{W}$. ■

Lemma 23.1.2 (An easy linear map test)**.**
A map T between vector spaces $\mathbf{V}$ and $\mathbf{W}$ is a linear map if and only if $T(\mathbf{v}_1 + \lambda \mathbf{v}_2) = T(\mathbf{v}_1) + \lambda T(\mathbf{v}_2)$ for all $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2 \in \mathbf{V}$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{K}$.

Proof.
($\Rightarrow$) Suppose that $T \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V}, \mathbf{W})$. Then for any $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2 \in \mathbf{V}$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{K}$

$$\begin{aligned} T(\mathbf{v}_1 + \lambda \mathbf{v}_2) &= T(\mathbf{v}_1) + T(\lambda \mathbf{v}_2) \\ &= T(\mathbf{v}_1) + \lambda T(\mathbf{v}_2) \end{aligned}$$

($\Leftarrow$) Now suppose $T(\mathbf{v}_1 + \lambda \mathbf{v}_2) = T(\mathbf{v}_1) + \lambda T(\mathbf{v}_2)$ for all $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2 \in \mathbf{V}$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{K}$. If we set $\lambda = 1$, then

$$\begin{aligned} T(\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2) &= T(\mathbf{v}_1 + 1 \cdot \mathbf{v}_2) \\ &= T(\mathbf{v}_1) + 1T(\mathbf{v}_2) \\ &= T(\mathbf{v}_1) + T(\mathbf{v}_2) \end{aligned}$$

And if we set $\mathbf{v}_1 = \mathbf{0}_\mathbf{V}$,

$$\begin{aligned} T(\lambda \mathbf{v}) &= T(\mathbf{0}_\mathbf{V} + \lambda \mathbf{v}) \\ &= T(\mathbf{0}_\mathbf{V}) + \lambda T(\mathbf{v}) \\ &= \mathbf{0}_\mathbf{W} + \lambda T(\mathbf{v}) \\ &= \lambda T(\mathbf{v}) \end{aligned}$$

Therefore T satisfies both additivity and scalar multiplication, so $T \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V}, \mathbf{W})$. ■

Example 23.1.1.

The zero map

$$Z : \mathbf{V} \to \mathbf{W}$$
$$Z : \mathbf{v} \mapsto \mathbf{0_W}$$

is linear. To show this, pick any $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2 \in \mathbf{V}$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{K}$, then

$$\begin{aligned} Z(\mathbf{v}_1 + \lambda \mathbf{v}_2) &= \mathbf{0_W} \\ &= \mathbf{0_W} + \lambda \mathbf{0_W} \\ &= Z(\mathbf{v}_1) + \lambda Z(\mathbf{v}_2) \end{aligned}$$

Exercise 23.1.1.
Most textbooks use $T(\lambda_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \lambda_2 \mathbf{v}_2) = \lambda_1 T(\mathbf{v}_1) + \lambda_2 T(\mathbf{v}_2)$ as the linear map test. Show directly that this test is equivalent to the test in lemma 23.1.2. That is to say, if $T : \mathbf{V} \to \mathbf{W}$ is *any* map, show that $T(\lambda_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \lambda_2 \mathbf{v}_2) = \lambda_1 T(\mathbf{v}_1) + \lambda_2 T(\mathbf{v}_2)$ if and only if $T(\mathbf{v}_1 + \lambda \mathbf{v}_2) = T(\mathbf{v}_1) + \lambda T(\mathbf{v}_2)$.

Solution.
$\Rightarrow$ Suppose that $T(\lambda_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \lambda_2 \mathbf{v}_2) = \lambda_1 T(\mathbf{v}_1) + \lambda_2 T(\mathbf{v}_2)$ for all $\lambda_1, \lambda_2 \in \mathbb{K}$ and $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2 \in \mathbf{V}$. Set $\lambda_1 = 1$ and $\lambda_2 = \lambda$. We have

$$T(\mathbf{v}_1 + \lambda \mathbf{v}_2) = T(\mathbf{v}_1) + \lambda T(\mathbf{v}_2).$$

$\Leftarrow$ Now suppose that $T(\mathbf{v}_1 + \lambda \mathbf{v}_2) = T(\mathbf{v}_1) + \lambda T(\mathbf{v}_2)$ for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{K}$ and $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2 \in \mathbf{V}$. We want to show that $T(\lambda_1 \mathbf{x}_1 + \lambda_2 \mathbf{x}_2) = \lambda_1 T(\mathbf{x}_1) + \lambda_2 T(\mathbf{x}_2)$ for all $\lambda_1, \lambda_2 \in \mathbb{K}$ and $\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2 \in \mathbf{V}$.

The result is obvious if $\lambda_1 = 1$ (by setting $\lambda = \lambda_2$), so assume $\lambda_1 \neq 1$. For any $\lambda_1, \lambda_2 \in \mathbb{K}$ with $\lambda_1 \neq 1$ and $\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2 \in \mathbf{V}$, pick

$$\boxed{\mathbf{v}_1 = \mathbf{x}_1}, \quad \boxed{\lambda = \lambda_1 - 1}, \quad \text{and} \quad \boxed{\mathbf{v}_2 = \mathbf{x}_1 + \frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1 - 1}\mathbf{x}_2}.$$

On one hand,

$$\begin{aligned} T(\mathbf{v}_1 + \lambda \mathbf{v}_2) &= T\left(\mathbf{x}_1 + (\lambda_1 - 1)\left(\mathbf{x}_1 + \frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1 - 1}\mathbf{x}_2\right)\right) \\ &= T\left(\mathbf{x}_1 + (\lambda_1 - 1)\mathbf{x}_1 + \frac{\lambda_2(\lambda_1 - 1)}{\lambda_1 - 1}\mathbf{x}_2\right) \\ &= T(\lambda_1 \mathbf{x}_1 + \lambda_2 \mathbf{x}_2) \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand,

$$\begin{aligned} T(\mathbf{v}_1 + \lambda \mathbf{v}_2) &= T(\mathbf{v}_1) + \lambda T(\mathbf{v}_2) \\ &= T(\mathbf{x}_1) + (\lambda_1 - 1)\left[T\left(\mathbf{x}_1 + \frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1 - 1}\mathbf{x}_2\right)\right] \\ &= T(\mathbf{x}_1) + (\lambda_1 - 1)\left[T(\mathbf{x}_1) + \frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1 - 1}T(\mathbf{x}_2)\right] \\ &= \lambda_1 T(\mathbf{x}_1) + \lambda_2 T(\mathbf{x}_2) \end{aligned}$$

This shows that $T(\lambda_1 \mathbf{x}_1 + \lambda_2 \mathbf{x}_2) = \lambda_1 T(\mathbf{x}_1) + \lambda_2 T(\mathbf{x}_2)$. ●

Theorem 23.1.3 (The set of linear maps is itself a vector space.).
Let $\mathbf{V}$ and $\mathbf{W}$ be vector spaces over $\mathbb{K}$. The set $\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V}, \mathbf{W})$ is itself a vector space where we define

i) $(S + T)(\mathbf{v}) := S(\mathbf{v}) + T(\mathbf{v})$ for all $S, T \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V}, \mathbf{W})$ and $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$

ii) $(\lambda T)(\mathbf{v}) := \lambda(T(\mathbf{v}))$ for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{K}$, $T \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V}, \mathbf{W})$, and $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$.

Proof.
We need to verify that the conditions laid out in definition 21.1.1 hold.

First, to show that if $S, T \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V}, \mathbf{W})$ then $S + T \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V}, \mathbf{W})$, pick $\lambda \in \mathbb{K}$ and $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2 \in \mathbf{V}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
(S+T)(\mathbf{v}_1 + \lambda \mathbf{v}_2) &= S(\mathbf{v}_1 + \lambda \mathbf{v}_2) + T(\mathbf{v}_1 + \lambda \mathbf{v}_2) \\
&= S(\mathbf{v}_1) + \lambda S(\mathbf{v}_2) + T(\mathbf{v}_1) + \lambda T(\mathbf{v}_2) \\
&= S(\mathbf{v}_1) + T(\mathbf{v}_1) + \lambda (S(\mathbf{v}_2) + T(\mathbf{v}_2)) \\
&= (S+T)(\mathbf{v}_1) + \lambda (S+T)(\mathbf{v}_2)
\end{aligned}$$

Similarly to show that $\lambda T \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V}, \mathbf{W})$, for any $\mu \in \mathbb{K}$ and $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2 \in \mathbf{V}$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
(\lambda T)(\mathbf{v}_1 + \mu \mathbf{v}_2) &= \lambda (T(\mathbf{v}_1 + \mu \mathbf{v}_2)) \\
&= \lambda (T(\mathbf{v}_1)) + \lambda \mu T(\mathbf{v}_2) \\
&= (\lambda T)(\mathbf{v}_1) + \mu (\lambda T)(\mathbf{v}_2)
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, $\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V}, \mathbf{W})$ is closed under addition and scalar multiplication.
For commutativity, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
(S+T)(\mathbf{v}) &= S(\mathbf{v}) + T(\mathbf{v}) \\
&= T(\mathbf{v}) + S(\mathbf{v}) && \text{(Since } \mathbf{W} \text{ is a vector space.)} \\
&= (T+S)(\mathbf{v})
\end{aligned}$$

Associativity and the distributive properties will also rely on inheritance of those properties from $\mathbf{W}$. If $S, T, U \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V}, \mathbf{W})$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{K}$

$$\begin{aligned}
((S+T)+U)(\mathbf{v}) &= (S+T)(\mathbf{v}) + U(\mathbf{v}) \\
&= (S(\mathbf{v}) + T(\mathbf{v})) + U(\mathbf{v}) \\
&= S(\mathbf{v}) + (T(\mathbf{v}) + U(\mathbf{v})) \\
&= S(\mathbf{v}) + (T+U)(\mathbf{v}) \\
&= (S+(T+U))(\mathbf{v})
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
(\lambda (S+T))(\mathbf{v}) &= \lambda ((S+T)(\mathbf{v})) \\
&= \lambda (S(\mathbf{v}) + T(\mathbf{v})) \\
&= \lambda (S(\mathbf{v})) + \lambda (T(\mathbf{v})) \\
&= (\lambda S)(\mathbf{v}) + (\lambda T)(\mathbf{v}) \\
&= (\lambda S + \lambda T)(\mathbf{v})
\end{aligned}$$

Similarly, if $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{K}$ and $T \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V}, \mathbf{W})$ then

$$\begin{aligned}
(\alpha (\beta T))(\mathbf{v}) &= \alpha ((\beta T)(\mathbf{v})) \\
&= \alpha (\beta (T(\mathbf{v}))) \\
&= (\alpha \beta)(T(\mathbf{v})) \\
&= ((\alpha \beta) T)(\mathbf{v})
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
((\alpha + \beta) T)(\mathbf{v}) &= (\alpha + \beta)(T(\mathbf{v})) \\
&= \alpha (T(\mathbf{v})) + \beta (T(\mathbf{v})) \\
&= (\alpha T)(\mathbf{v}) + (\beta T)(\mathbf{v}) \\
&= (\alpha T + \beta T)(\mathbf{v})
\end{aligned}$$

So the associative and distributive properties hold.
For the additive identity, let us use example 23.1.1. For any $T \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V}, \mathbf{W})$ and $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$,

$$\begin{aligned}(T + Z)(\mathbf{v}) &= T(\mathbf{v}) + Z(\mathbf{v}) \\ &= T(\mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{0}_{\mathbf{W}} \\ &= T(\mathbf{v})\end{aligned}$$

So the zero map is the additive identity. We will use 0 or $0_{\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V},\mathbf{W})}$ (only when context is absolutely required) in place of Z.
For additive inverses, if $T \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V}, \mathbf{W})$, define $-T$ by $(-T)(\mathbf{v}) := -T(\mathbf{v})$ for all $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$. First, we verify that $-T \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V}, \mathbf{W})$. For any $\lambda \in \mathbb{K}$ and $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2 \in \mathbf{V}$,

$$\begin{aligned}(-T)(\mathbf{v}_1 + \lambda\mathbf{v}_2) &= -T(\mathbf{v}_1 + \lambda\mathbf{v}_2) \\ &= -(T(\mathbf{v}_1) + \lambda T(\mathbf{v}_2)) \\ &= -T(\mathbf{v}_1) - \lambda T(\mathbf{v}_2) \\ &= (-T)(\mathbf{v}_1) + \lambda(-T)(\mathbf{v}_2)\end{aligned}$$

Thus $-T \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V}, \mathbf{W})$. Now, for any $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$,

$$\begin{aligned}(T + (-T))(\mathbf{v}) &= T(\mathbf{v}) + (-T)(\mathbf{v}) \\ &= T(\mathbf{v}) + (-T(\mathbf{v})) \\ &= \mathbf{0}_{\mathbf{W}} \\ &= Z(\mathbf{v})\end{aligned}$$

So $-T$ is the additive inverse of T.
Finally, for the multiplicative identity, if $T \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V}, \mathbf{W})$ and $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$,

$$\begin{aligned}(1T)(\mathbf{v}) &= 1(T(\mathbf{v})) \\ &= T(\mathbf{v})\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, all the vector space axioms are satisfied, and $\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V}, \mathbf{W})$ is a vector space over $\mathbb{K}$. ■

§23.2 Duals

Definition 23.2.1.
Let $\mathbf{V}$ be a vector space over a field $\mathbb{K}$. The **dual space** of $\mathbf{V}$ is simply $\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V}, \mathbb{K})$. We often denote the dual space as $\mathbf{V}^*$. Elements of the dual space are called **dual vectors**, **covectors**, or **linear functionals**.

24 Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors

§24.1 Invariant Subspaces

Definition 24.1.1.
Let $T \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V})$. A subspace $\mathbf{U} \subset \mathbf{V}$ is **invariant under** T or is an **invariant subspace of** T if $T\mathbf{u} \in \mathbf{U}$ for all $\mathbf{u} \in \mathbf{U}$.

Exercise 24.1.1.
Suppose that $T \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V})$ and $\mathbf{U}$ is a subspace of $\mathbf{V}$. Prove that if $\mathbf{U} \subseteq \operatorname{null}(T)$, then $\mathbf{U}$ is an invariant subspace of T.

Solution.
Since $\mathbf{U} \subseteq \operatorname{null}(T)$, $T\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$ for all $\mathbf{u} \in \mathbf{U}$. Since $\mathbf{U}$ is a subspace, $\mathbf{0} \in \mathbf{U}$ and hence $T\mathbf{u} \in \mathbf{U}$ for all $\mathbf{u} \in \mathbf{U}$. Therefore $\mathbf{U}$ is invariant under T. ●

Exercise 24.1.2.
Suppose that $T \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V})$ and $\mathbf{U}$ is a subspace of $\mathbf{V}$. Prove that if $\operatorname{range}(T) \subseteq \mathbf{U}$, then $\mathbf{U}$ is an invariant subspace of T.

Solution.
Let $\mathbf{u} \in \mathbf{U}$. Then $T\mathbf{u} \in \operatorname{range}(T)$ by definition of the range. Since $\operatorname{range}(T) \subseteq \mathbf{U}$, we have $T\mathbf{u} \in \mathbf{U}$. Therefore $\mathbf{U}$ is invariant under T. ●

Exercise 24.1.3.
Suppose that $T \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V})$ and $\mathbf{V}_1, \dots, \mathbf{V}_n$ are invariant under T. Show that $\mathbf{V}_1 + \cdots + \mathbf{V}_n$ is invariant under T.

Solution.
Pick any $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}_1 + \cdots + \mathbf{V}_n$. Then $\mathbf{v} = \sum_{k=1}^{n} \mathbf{v}_k$ for $\mathbf{v}_k \in \mathbf{V}_k$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} T(\mathbf{v}) &= T\left(\sum_{k=1}^{n} \mathbf{v}_k\right) \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^{n} T(\mathbf{v}_k) \end{aligned}$$

Since each $\mathbf{V}_k$ is invariant under T, $T(\mathbf{v}_k) \in \mathbf{V}_k$ and hence $\sum_{k=1}^{n} T(\mathbf{v}_k) \in \mathbf{V}_1 + \cdots + \mathbf{V}_n$ so $\mathbf{V}_1 + \cdots + \mathbf{V}_n$ is invariant under T. ●

Exercise 24.1.4.
Suppose that $T \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V})$. Prove that the intersection of every collection of invariant subspaces of T is invariant under T.

Solution.
Let $\{\mathbf{V}_\alpha\}_{\alpha \in A}$ be the collection of all invariant subspaces of T. Let $B \subseteq A$ be any subcollection, and consider $\bigcap_{\beta \in B} \mathbf{V}_\beta$. Pick any $\mathbf{v} \in \bigcap_{\beta \in B} \mathbf{V}_\beta$. Then $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}_\beta$ for all $\beta \in B$. Since each $\mathbf{V}_\beta$ is invariant under T, we have $T\mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}_\beta$ for all $\beta \in B$. Hence $T\mathbf{v} \in \bigcap_{\beta \in B} \mathbf{V}_\beta$. ●

Exercise 24.1.5.
Prove or provide a counterexample: If $\mathbf{V}$ is finite-dimensional and $\mathbf{U}$ is a subspace of $\mathbf{V}$ that is invariant under every operator on $\mathbf{V}$, then $\mathbf{U} = \{\mathbf{0}\}$ or $\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{V}$.

Solution.
Suppose that $\mathbf{U}$ is a proper non-trivial subspace of $\mathbf{V}$. Hence, there exists $\mathbf{u} \in \mathbf{U}$ and $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V} - \mathbf{U}$, each non-zero. Since $\mathbf{u} \neq \mathbf{0}$, we can extend $\{\mathbf{u}\}$ to a basis $\{\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u}_1, \mathbf{u}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{u}_n\}$ for $\mathbf{V}$. Define

$$T(\mathbf{u}) = \mathbf{v} \quad T(\mathbf{u}_k) = 0 \quad \text{for } k = 1, 2, \ldots, n$$

and extend linearly. By construction, $\mathbf{U}$ is not invariant under T and hence the claim is true. ●

Definition 24.1.2.
Suppose $T \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V})$. We say that $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$ is an **eigenvector** of T if there exists a $\lambda \in \mathbb{K}$, called the **eigenvalue**, such that $T\mathbf{v} = \lambda\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{v} \neq \mathbf{0}$.

Exercise 24.1.6.
Suppose that $P \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V})$ has the property that $P^2 = P$. If λ has an eigenvalue, then λ must be 0 or 1.

Solution.
Suppose $\mathbf{v}$ is an eigenvector of P with eigenvalue λ. Then, on one hand,

$$P^2(\mathbf{v}) = P(\mathbf{v}) = \lambda\mathbf{v}$$

On the other hand,

$$P^2(\mathbf{v}) = P(P(\mathbf{v})) = P(\lambda\mathbf{v}) = \lambda P(\mathbf{v}) = \lambda^2\mathbf{v}$$

So

$$\lambda\mathbf{v} = \lambda^2\mathbf{v}.$$

Therefore $\lambda = 0$ or $\lambda = 1$. ●

25 Inner Product Spaces

§25.1 Inner Products and Norms

Definition 25.1.1.
An **inner product** on a vector space $\mathbf{V}$ is a map

$$\begin{aligned} \cdot :& \mathbf{V} \times \mathbf{V} \to \mathbb{K} \\ & (\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}) \mapsto \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle \end{aligned}$$

such that all of the following criteria are held:

Non-negative: $\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle \geq 0$ for all $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$.

Definiteness: $\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle = 0$ if and only if $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$.

Linearity in the first argument: $\langle \mathbf{u} + \lambda \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle = \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w} \rangle + \lambda \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle$ for all $\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \in \mathbf{V}$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{K}$.

Conjugate symmetry: $\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle = \overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u} \rangle}$ for all $\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$.

If $\mathbf{V}$ has an inner product defined, we call $\mathbf{V}$ an **inner product space**.

Note. Some older texts refer to inner product spaces as **pre-Hilbert spaces**. The prefix "pre" will make sense once you study functional analysis.

Lemma 25.1.1.
An inner product on a vector space $\mathbf{V}$ is conjugate linear in the second component. That is:

$$\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} + \lambda \mathbf{w} \rangle = \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle + \overline{\lambda} \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w} \rangle .$$

Proof.
We have

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} + \lambda \mathbf{w} \rangle &= \overline{\langle \mathbf{v} + \lambda \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{u} \rangle} \\ &= \overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u} \rangle + \lambda \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{u} \rangle} \\ &= \overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u} \rangle} + \overline{\lambda} \overline{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{u} \rangle} \\ &= \overline{\overline{\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle}} + \overline{\lambda} \overline{\overline{\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}} \\ &= \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle + \overline{\lambda} \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w} \rangle \end{aligned}$$

■

Exercise 25.1.1.
Let $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}_1, \mathbf{w}_2$ be vectors in an inner product space $\mathbf{V}$. Show that

$$\langle \mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_1 \rangle - \langle \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle = \langle \mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}_1 - \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle + \langle \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}_1 - \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle + \langle \mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle$$

Solution.
Just calculate the right hand side.

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}_1 - \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle + \langle \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}_1 - \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle + \langle \mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle &= \langle \mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_1 - \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle - \langle \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}_1 - \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle + \langle \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}_1 - \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle + \langle \mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle \\ &= \langle \mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_1 - \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle - \cancel{\langle \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}_1 - \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle} + \cancel{\langle \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}_1 - \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle} + \langle \mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle \\ &= \langle \mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_1 - \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle + \langle \mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle \\ &= \langle \mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_1 \rangle - \langle \mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle + \langle \mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle - \langle \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle \\ &= \langle \mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_1 \rangle - \cancel{\langle \mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle} + \cancel{\langle \mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle} - \langle \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle \\ &= \langle \mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_1 \rangle - \langle \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle \end{aligned}$$

Exercise 25.1.2.
For a complex inner product space **V**, show that

$$\mathfrak{Im}\left(\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right) = \mathfrak{Re}\left(\langle \mathbf{v}, i\mathbf{w}\rangle\right) \quad \text{for all } \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \in \mathbf{V}.$$

Solution.
Suppose that $\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle = a + bi$. Then, by conjugate linearity in the second component, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\langle \mathbf{v}, i\mathbf{w}\rangle &= \bar{i}\,\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle \\ &= -i\,\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle \\ &= -i\,(a + bi) \\ &= b - ai\end{aligned}$$

It is clear that $\mathfrak{Im}(a + bi) = \mathfrak{Re}(b - ai)$.

Definition 25.1.2.
Suppose that **V** is an inner-product space. If $\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \in \mathbf{V}$ have the property that $\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle = 0$, we say that **v** and **w** are **orthogonal** and sometimes write $\mathbf{v} \perp \mathbf{w}$. Note that the zero vector is orthogonal to every vector in **V**.

Example 25.1.1.
Suppose that $\mathbf{x} \perp \mathbf{y}$ and $\mathbf{y} \perp \mathbf{z}$. Is it necessarily true that $\mathbf{x} \perp \mathbf{z}$?
No. For a counterexample, take $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{z} \neq \mathbf{0}$. Then $\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}\rangle = 0$ and $\langle \mathbf{y}, \mathbf{z}\rangle = 0$ are satisfied, but $\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{z}\rangle \neq 0$.
Alternatively, take $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{0}$ and choose any **x** and **z** such that $\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{z}\rangle \neq 0$.

Lemma 25.1.2.
Let S be a subset of an inner product space **V**. The set

$$S^{\perp} = \{\mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V} \mid \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{s}\rangle = 0 \text{ for all } \mathbf{s} \in S\}$$

is a subspace of **V**.

Proof.
Clearly $\mathbf{0} \in S^{\perp}$. If $\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \in S^{\perp}$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{K}$, then for any $\mathbf{s} \in S$ we have

$$\begin{aligned}\langle \mathbf{v} + \lambda\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{s}\rangle &= \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{s}\rangle + \lambda\,\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{s}\rangle \\ &= 0 + \lambda \cdot 0 \\ &= 0\end{aligned}$$

So $S^{\perp}$ is a subspace of **V**. We call $S^{\perp}$ the **orthogonal complement** of S. In speech, $S^{\perp}$ is often read as “S perp.” ■

Exercise 25.1.3.
Show that

$$S^{\perp} = (\mathrm{span}(S))^{\perp}$$

Solution.

Clearly $(\mathrm{span}(S))^\perp \subseteq S^\perp$ since $S \subseteq \mathrm{span}(S)$. Now pick $\mathbf{v} \in S^\perp$ and pick any $\mathbf{s} \in \mathrm{span}(S)$. Therefore $\mathbf{s} = \sum_{k=1}^{n} \lambda_k \mathbf{s}_k$ for $\mathbf{s}_k \in S$. So

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{s} \rangle &= \left\langle \mathbf{v}, \sum_{k=1}^{n} \lambda_k \mathbf{s}_k \right\rangle \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^{n} \overline{\lambda_k} \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{s}_k \rangle \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^{n} \overline{\lambda_k} \cdot 0 && (\text{Since } \mathbf{v} \in S^\perp) \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

So $\mathbf{v} \in (\mathrm{span}(S))^\perp$ ●

§25.1.1 Norms

Definition 25.1.3.
A **norm** is a map $||\cdot|| : \mathbf{V} \to [0, \infty)$, where we write $\mathbf{v} \mapsto ||\mathbf{v}||$, such that:

- **i)** $||\mathbf{v}|| = 0$ if and only if $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$.
- **ii)** $||\lambda \mathbf{v}|| = |\lambda| \; ||\mathbf{v}||$ for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{K}$ and $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$.
- **iii)** $||\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}|| \leq ||\mathbf{v}|| + ||\mathbf{w}||$ for all $\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \in \mathbf{V}$.

If $\mathbf{V}$ has a norm defined on it, we call the pair $(\mathbf{V}, ||\cdot||)$ a **normed vector space**.

Theorem 25.1.3.
If $\mathbf{V}$ is an inner-product space, then it is also a normed vector space whose **induced norm** is defined to be:

$$||\mathbf{v}|| := \sqrt{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle}.$$

Proof.
We need to show that $||\cdot|| = \sqrt{\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle}$ satisfies the properties of a norm.

Suppose $||\mathbf{v}|| = 0$. Then, by definition,

$$\sqrt{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle} = 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle = 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}.$$

Thus, $||\mathbf{v}|| = 0$ if and only if $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$. (The reverse direction is obvious.)
Next, for any $\lambda \in \mathbb{K}$ and $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} ||\lambda \mathbf{v}|| &= \sqrt{\langle \lambda \mathbf{v}, \lambda \mathbf{v} \rangle} \\ &= \sqrt{\lambda \overline{\lambda} \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle} \\ &= \sqrt{|\lambda|^2 \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle} \\ &= \sqrt{|\lambda|^2} \sqrt{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle} \\ &= |\lambda| \sqrt{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle} \\ &= |\lambda| \; ||\mathbf{v}|| \end{aligned}$$

Thus, $||\lambda \mathbf{v}|| = |\lambda| \; ||\mathbf{v}||$ for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{K}$ and $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$.

Finally,

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{v}+\mathbf{w}\| &= \sqrt{\langle \mathbf{v}+\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v}+\mathbf{w}\rangle} \\
&= \sqrt{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}\rangle + \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle + \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v}\rangle + \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w}\rangle} \\
&= \sqrt{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}\rangle + \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle + \overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle} + \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w}\rangle} \\
&= \sqrt{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}\rangle + 2\mathfrak{Re}\left[\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right] + \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w}\rangle} \\
&\le \sqrt{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}\rangle + 2|\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle| + \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w}\rangle} \\
&\le \sqrt{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}\rangle + 2\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}\rangle^{\frac{1}{2}}\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w}\rangle^{\frac{1}{2}} + \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w}\rangle} && \text{(By the Cauchy–Schwarz inequality)} \\
&= \sqrt{\left(\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}\rangle^{\frac{1}{2}} + \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w}\rangle^{\frac{1}{2}}\right)^2} \\
&= \sqrt{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}\rangle} + \sqrt{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w}\rangle}
\end{aligned}$$

This shows that $\|\mathbf{v}+\mathbf{w}\| \le \|\mathbf{v}\| + \|\mathbf{w}\|$. This completes the proof. ■

Exercise 25.1.4.
Show that $\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle = 0$ if and only if

$$\|\mathbf{v}+\lambda\mathbf{w}\| = \|\mathbf{v}-\lambda\mathbf{w}\| \quad \text{for all } \lambda \in \mathbb{K}.$$

Solution.
($\Longrightarrow$) Suppose that $\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle = 0$. It suffices to show that $\|\mathbf{v}+\lambda\mathbf{w}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{v}-\lambda\mathbf{w}\|^2$ for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{K}$. We calculate

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{v}+\lambda\mathbf{w}\|^2 &= \langle \mathbf{v}+\lambda\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v}+\lambda\mathbf{w}\rangle \\
&= \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}+\lambda\mathbf{w}\rangle + \lambda\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v}+\lambda\mathbf{w}\rangle \\
&= \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}\rangle + \overline{\lambda}\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle + \lambda\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v}\rangle + |\lambda|^2\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w}\rangle
\end{aligned}$$

So

$$\boxed{\|\mathbf{v}+\lambda\mathbf{w}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{v}\|^2 + \overline{\lambda}\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle + \lambda\overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle} + |\lambda|^2\|\mathbf{w}\|^2} \tag{25.1.1}$$

Similarly, calculating $\|\mathbf{v}-\lambda\mathbf{w}\|^2$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{v}-\lambda\mathbf{w}\|^2 &= \langle \mathbf{v}-\lambda\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v}-\lambda\mathbf{w}\rangle \\
&= \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}-\lambda\mathbf{w}\rangle - \lambda\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v}-\lambda\mathbf{w}\rangle \\
&= \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}\rangle - \overline{\lambda}\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle - \lambda\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v}\rangle + |\lambda|^2\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w}\rangle
\end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{\|\mathbf{v}-\lambda\mathbf{w}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{v}\|^2 - \overline{\lambda}\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle - \lambda\overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle} + |\lambda|^2\|\mathbf{w}\|^2} \tag{25.1.2}$$

Subtracting Equation (25.1.2) from Equation (25.1.1), we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{v}+\lambda\mathbf{w}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{v}-\lambda\mathbf{w}\|^2 &= 2\overline{\lambda}\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle + 2\lambda\overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle} \\
&= 0 && \text{(since } \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle = 0\text{)}
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore $\|\mathbf{v}+\lambda\mathbf{w}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{v}-\lambda\mathbf{w}\|^2$, which implies $\|\mathbf{v}+\lambda\mathbf{w}\| = \|\mathbf{v}-\lambda\mathbf{w}\|$ for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{K}$.

($\Longleftarrow$) Now suppose that $\|\mathbf{v}+\lambda\mathbf{w}\| = \|\mathbf{v}-\lambda\mathbf{w}\|$ for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{K}$. Then $\|\mathbf{v}+\lambda\mathbf{w}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{v}-\lambda\mathbf{w}\|^2$ for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{K}$. Using equations Equation (25.1.1) and Equation (25.1.2), we have

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= \|\mathbf{v}+\lambda\mathbf{w}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{v}-\lambda\mathbf{w}\|^2 \\
&= 2\overline{\lambda}\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle + 2\lambda\overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle}
\end{aligned}$$

for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{K}$.

Case 1: If $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{R}$, then $\overline{\lambda} = \lambda$ and $\overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} = \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle$. Setting $\lambda = 1$, we get

$$0 = 4 \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle ,$$

so $\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle = 0$.

Case 2: If $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{C}$, the equation $2\overline{\lambda} \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle + 2\lambda\overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} = 0$ must hold for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$.
Setting $\lambda = 1$:

$$2 \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle + 2\overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} = 0 \implies \mathfrak{Re} \left(\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle \right) = 0.$$

Setting $\lambda = i$:

$$\begin{aligned} 2(-i) \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle + 2(i)\overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} = 0 &\implies -i \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle + i\overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} = 0 \\ \implies \overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} = \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle &\implies \mathfrak{Im} \left(\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle \right) = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Since both the real and imaginary parts of $\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle$ are zero, we conclude $\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle = 0$. ●

Lemma 25.1.4.
Suppose that $\mathbf{V}$ is a real inner product space and that

$$||\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}||^2 = ||\mathbf{v}||^2 + ||\mathbf{w}||^2.$$

Then $\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle = 0$.

Proof.
If $||\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}||^2 = ||\mathbf{v}||^2 + ||\mathbf{w}||^2$ then $||\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}||^2 - ||\mathbf{v}||^2 - ||\mathbf{w}||^2 = 0$. So

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \langle \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w} \rangle - \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle - \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle \\ &= \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle + 2 \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle + \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle - \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle - \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle \\ 0 &= 2 \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle \end{aligned}$$

This proves the result. ■

Exercise 25.1.5.
Prove lemma 25.1.4 using the contrapositive.

Solution.
Suppose that $\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle = \lambda$ for $\lambda \neq 0$. Then, by using a similar argument as above, we can show that

$$\langle \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w} \rangle - \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle - \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle = 2\lambda$$

●

Exercise 25.1.6.
Show that the result laid out in lemma 25.1.4 is not necessarily true in a complex vector space.

Solution.
Take $\mathbb{C}$ to be the vector space over itself and let $\mathbf{v} = i$ and $\mathbf{w} = 1$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} ||\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}||^2 - ||\mathbf{v}||^2 - ||\mathbf{w}||^2 &= ||1 + i||^2 - ||1||^2 - ||i||^2 \\ &= 2 - 1 - 1 \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

But

$$\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle = \langle i, 1 \rangle = i.$$

●

Exercise 25.1.7.

Suppose that $\mathbf{V}$ is an inner product space over $\mathbb{C}$. For every $\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \in \mathbf{V}$. Show that

$$\|\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{v}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{w}\|^2 + 2\mathfrak{Re}\left(\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle\right).$$

Solution.
We can take Equation (25.1.1) and let $\lambda = 1$ to get

$$\begin{aligned}\|\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}\|^2 &= \|\mathbf{v}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{w}\|^2 + \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle + \overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} \\ &= \|\mathbf{v}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{w}\|^2 + 2\mathfrak{Re}\left(\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle\right)\end{aligned}$$

●

Exercise 25.1.8.
Suppose that $\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$ a complex inner-product space, such that $\|\mathbf{u}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{v}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}\|^2$. Is it necessarily true that $\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle = 0$? If not, provide a counter-example

Solution.
Exercise 25.1.7 suggests that it is not true. Let $\mathbf{V} = \mathbb{C}$ and let $\mathbf{u} = 1 + i$ and $\mathbf{v} = 1 - i$. On one hand, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\|\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{u}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{v}\|^2 &= \|1 + i + 1 - i\|^2 - \|1 + i\|^2 - \|1 - i\|^2 \\ &= 4 - 2 - 2 \\ &= 0\end{aligned}$$

So $\|\mathbf{u}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{v}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}\|^2$ But on the other hand,

$$\begin{aligned}\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle &= (1 + i) \cdot \overline{1 - i} \\ &= (1 + i) \cdot (1 + i) \\ &= 2i\end{aligned}$$

So the claim is false. ●

Exercise 25.1.9.
Let $\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}$ be vectors in an inner-product space $\mathbf{V}$. Show that $\|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{w}\| = \|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}\| + \|\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{w}\|$ if and only if there exists a real number $t \in [0, 1]$ such that $\mathbf{v} = t\mathbf{u} + (1 - t)\mathbf{w}$.

Solution.
$(\Longleftarrow)$ We will start with the reverse direction because it's easier. Suppose there exists a $t \in [0, 1]$ such that

$$\mathbf{v} = t\mathbf{u} + (1 - t)\mathbf{w}.$$

If $t = 0$ or $t = 1$, then $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{w}$ or $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{u}$ respectively, and the result is trivial. So assume $t \in (0, 1)$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}\| + \|\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{w}\| &= \|\mathbf{u} - (t\mathbf{u} + (1 - t)\mathbf{w})\| + \|t\mathbf{u} + (1 - t)\mathbf{w} - \mathbf{w}\| \\ &= \|(1 - t)(\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{w})\| + \|t(\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{w})\| \\ &= (1 - t)\|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{w}\| + t\|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{w}\| \quad \text{(since } t \in (0, 1)\text{, it can be taken out of the norm without absolute value)} \\ &= \|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{w}\|,\end{aligned}$$

which is what we wanted.

$(\Longrightarrow)$ Suppose that

$$\|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{w}\| = \|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}\| + \|\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{w}\|.$$

Set $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{v} - \mathbf{w}$. Then we know that

$$\|\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y}\| \leq \|\mathbf{x}\| + \|\mathbf{y}\|,$$

with equality if and only if $\mathbf{x} = \lambda\mathbf{y}$ for some $\lambda \geq 0$. Since we are assuming equality, it follows that

$$\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v} = \lambda(\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{w}),$$

With some algebraic manipulation, we can see that

$$\mathbf{v} = \frac{1}{1+\lambda}\mathbf{u} + \frac{\lambda}{1+\lambda}\mathbf{w},$$

we can set $t = \dfrac{1}{1+\lambda}$ so $(1-t) = \dfrac{\lambda}{1+\lambda}$ and we are done. ●

Theorem 25.1.5 (The Polarization Identity).
If $\mathbf{V}$ is a complex inner product space, then

$$\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle = \frac{1}{4}\left(\|\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{u}-\mathbf{v}\|^2 + i\|\mathbf{u}+i\mathbf{v}\|^2 - i\|\mathbf{u}-i\mathbf{v}\|^2 \right).$$

Proof.
We just calculate the right-hand side.

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{u}-\mathbf{v}\|^2 + i\|\mathbf{u}+i\mathbf{v}\|^2 - i\|\mathbf{u}-i\mathbf{v}\|^2 &= \langle \mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v} \rangle - \langle \mathbf{u}-\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}-\mathbf{v} \rangle + i\langle \mathbf{u}+i\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}+i\mathbf{v} \rangle - i\langle \mathbf{u}-i\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}-i\mathbf{v} \rangle \\
&= \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v} \rangle + \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v} \rangle - \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u}-\mathbf{v} \rangle + \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}-\mathbf{v} \rangle \\
&\quad + i\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u}+i\mathbf{v} \rangle + i\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}+i\mathbf{v} \rangle - i\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u}-i\mathbf{v} \rangle - i\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}-i\mathbf{v} \rangle \\
&= \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u} \rangle + \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle + \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u} \rangle + \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle - \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u} \rangle + \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle + \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u} \rangle - \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle \\
&\quad + i\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u} \rangle + \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle + i\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u} \rangle + i^2\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle - i\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u} \rangle + \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle + i\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u} \rangle - i^2\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle \\
&= \cancel{\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u} \rangle} + \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle + \cancel{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u} \rangle} + \cancel{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle} - \cancel{\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u} \rangle} + \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle + \cancel{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u} \rangle} - \cancel{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle} \\
&\quad + \cancel{i\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u} \rangle} + \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle + \cancel{i\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u} \rangle} + \cancel{i^2\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle} - \cancel{i\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u} \rangle} + \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle + \cancel{i\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u} \rangle} - \cancel{i^2\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle} \\
&= 4\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle
\end{aligned}$$

which is what we wanted to show. ■

Note: An easy way to write (or remember) the polarization identity is

$$\boxed{\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle = \frac{1}{4}\left(\sum_{k=0}^{3} i^k \left\|\mathbf{u} + i^k\mathbf{v}\right\|^2 \right).}$$

Lemma 25.1.6.
Suppose that $\mathbf{V}$ and $\mathbf{W}$ are complex inner product spaces and $T \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V}, \mathbf{W})$. Then T preserves the inner product if and only if it preserves the induced norm. That is,

$$\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \rangle_{\mathbf{V}} = \langle T(\mathbf{x}), T(\mathbf{y}) \rangle_{\mathbf{W}} \text{ for all } \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \in \mathbf{V}$$

if and only if

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|_{\mathbf{V}} = \|T(\mathbf{x})\|_{\mathbf{W}} \text{ for all } \mathbf{x} \in \mathbf{V}.$$

Proof.
$(\Rightarrow)$ Suppose that T preserves the inner product. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{x}\|_{\mathbf{V}} &= \sqrt{\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x} \rangle_{\mathbf{V}}} \\
&= \sqrt{\langle T(\mathbf{x}), T(\mathbf{x}) \rangle_{\mathbf{W}}} \\
&= \|T(\mathbf{x})\|_{\mathbf{W}}
\end{aligned}$$

So T also preserves norms.

($\Longleftarrow$) Conversely if T preserves norms, then by the poloarization identity

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \rangle_{\mathbf{V}} &= \frac{1}{4}\left(\sum_{k=0}^{3} i^k \left\| \mathbf{x} + i^k \mathbf{y} \right\|_{\mathbf{V}}^2\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{4}\left(\sum_{k=0}^{3} i^k \left\| T\left(\mathbf{x} + i^k \mathbf{y}\right) \right\|_{\mathbf{W}}^2\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{4}\left(\sum_{k=0}^{3} i^k \left\| T(\mathbf{x}) + i^k T(\mathbf{y}) \right\|_{\mathbf{W}}^2\right) \\
&= \langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \rangle_{\mathbf{W}}
\end{aligned}$$

So T also preserves the inner product. ■

Exercise 25.1.10.
Suppose that $\mathbf{V}$ is a normed complex vector space and define the map $p : \mathbf{V} \times \mathbf{V} \to \mathbb{C}$ given by

$$p\left(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\right) = \frac{1}{4}\left(\sum_{k=0}^{3} i^k \left\| \mathbf{u} + i^k \mathbf{v} \right\|^2\right).$$

Show that

$$\mathfrak{Im}\left[p\left(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\right)\right] = \mathfrak{Re}\left[p(\mathbf{u}, i\mathbf{v})\right]$$

Solution.
For the left-hand side, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathfrak{Im}\left[p\left(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\right)\right] &= \mathfrak{Im}\left[\frac{1}{4}\left(\|\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}\|^2 + i\|\mathbf{u} + i\mathbf{v}\|^2 - i\|\mathbf{u} - i\mathbf{v}\|^2\right)\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{4}\left(\|\mathbf{u} + i\mathbf{v}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{u} - i\mathbf{v}\|^2\right)
\end{aligned}$$

For the right-hand side, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathfrak{Re}\left[p\left(\mathbf{u}, i\mathbf{v}\right)\right] &= \mathfrak{Re}\left[\frac{1}{4}\left(\|\mathbf{u} + i\mathbf{v}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{u} - i\mathbf{v}\|^2 + i\|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}\|^2 - i\|\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}\|^2\right)\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{4}\left(\|\mathbf{u} + i\mathbf{v}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{u} - i\mathbf{v}\|^2\right)
\end{aligned}$$

●

Exercise 25.1.11.
Let the conditions of exercise 25.1.10 hold. Then

$$p\left(\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{v}\right) = p\left(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{0}\right) = 0 \quad \text{for all } \mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}.$$

Solution.
We have

$$\begin{aligned}
p\left(\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{v}\right) &= \frac{1}{4}\left(\|\mathbf{0} + \mathbf{v}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{0} - \mathbf{v}\|^2 + i\|\mathbf{0} + i\mathbf{v}\|^2 - i\|\mathbf{0} - i\mathbf{v}\|^2\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{4}\left(\|\mathbf{v}\|^2 - \|-\mathbf{v}\|^2 + i\|i\mathbf{v}\|^2 - i\|-i\mathbf{v}\|^2\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{4}\left(\|\mathbf{v}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{v}\|^2 + i\|\mathbf{v}\|^2 - i\|\mathbf{v}\|^2\right) \\
&= 0
\end{aligned}$$

Showing $p\left(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{0}\right) = 0$ is similar. ●

Lemma 25.1.7 (The Parallelogram Law).

Suppose that **V** is an inner product space. Then for all $\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$, we have

$$||\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}||^2 + ||\mathbf{u}-\mathbf{v}||^2 = 2\left(||\mathbf{u}||^2 + ||\mathbf{v}||^2\right).$$

Proof.
This is a straight forward calculation.

$$\begin{aligned}
||\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}||^2 + ||\mathbf{u}-\mathbf{v}||^2 &= \langle \mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}\rangle + \langle \mathbf{u}-\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}-\mathbf{v}\rangle \\
&= \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}\rangle + \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}\rangle + \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u}-\mathbf{v}\rangle - \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}-\mathbf{v}\rangle \\
&= \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u}\rangle + \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle + \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}\rangle + \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}\rangle + \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u}\rangle - \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle - \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}\rangle + \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}\rangle \\
&= \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u}\rangle + \cancel{\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle} + \cancel{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}\rangle} + \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}\rangle + \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u}\rangle - \cancel{\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle} - \cancel{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}\rangle} + \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}\rangle \\
&= 2\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u}\rangle + 2\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}\rangle
\end{aligned}$$

So

$$\boxed{||\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}||^2 + ||\mathbf{u}-\mathbf{v}||^2 = 2\left(||\mathbf{u}||^2 + ||\mathbf{v}||^2\right).}$$

■

Theorem 25.1.8.
If **V** is a normed vector space with norm $||\cdot||$ which satisfies the parallelogram law for every $\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$, then there exists an inner product $\langle\cdot,\cdot\rangle$ whose induced norm is exactly $||\cdot||$.

Proof.
We will use the polarization identity to define our candidate inner product.

$$\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle = \frac{1}{4}\left(\sum_{k=0}^{3} i^k \left|\left|\mathbf{u} + i^k \mathbf{v}\right|\right|^2\right).$$

We need to show that the conditions laid out in definition 25.1.1 are satisfied.

Conjugate symmetry:
We need to show that $\mathfrak{Re}(\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle) = \mathfrak{Re}(\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}\rangle)$ and $\mathfrak{Im}(\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle) = -\mathfrak{Im}(\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}\rangle)$. In that regard, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathfrak{Re}(\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle) &= \mathfrak{Re}\left[\frac{1}{4}\left(||\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}||^2 - ||\mathbf{u}-\mathbf{v}||^2 + i||\mathbf{u}+i\mathbf{v}||^2 - i||\mathbf{u}-i\mathbf{v}||^2\right)\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{4}\left(||\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}||^2 - ||\mathbf{u}-\mathbf{v}||^2\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{4}\left(||\mathbf{v}+\mathbf{u}||^2 - ||-1(\mathbf{v}-\mathbf{u})||^2\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{4}\left(||\mathbf{v}+\mathbf{u}||^2 - |-1|^2\,||\mathbf{v}-\mathbf{u}||^2\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{4}\left(||\mathbf{v}+\mathbf{u}||^2 - ||\mathbf{v}-\mathbf{u}||^2\right) \\
&= \mathfrak{Re}\left[\frac{1}{4}\left(||\mathbf{v}+\mathbf{u}||^2 - ||\mathbf{v}-\mathbf{u}||^2 + i||\mathbf{v}+i\mathbf{u}||^2 - i||\mathbf{v}-i\mathbf{u}||^2\right)\right] \\
&= \mathfrak{Re}\left(\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}\rangle\right)
\end{aligned}$$

Similarly, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathfrak{Im}\left(\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle\right) &= \mathfrak{Im}\left[\frac{1}{4}\left(\|\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{u}-\mathbf{v}\|^2 + i\|\mathbf{u}+i\mathbf{v}\|^2 - i\|\mathbf{u}-i\mathbf{v}\|^2\right)\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{4}\mathfrak{Im}\left(i\|\mathbf{u}+i\mathbf{v}\|^2 - i\|\mathbf{u}-i\mathbf{v}\|^2\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{4}\mathfrak{Re}\left(\|\mathbf{u}+i\mathbf{v}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{u}-i\mathbf{v}\|^2\right) \\
&= -\frac{1}{4}\mathfrak{Re}\left(\|\mathbf{v}+i\mathbf{u}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{v}-i\mathbf{u}\|^2\right) \\
&= -\mathfrak{Im}\left(\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}\rangle\right).
\end{aligned}$$

So this shows that $\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle = \overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}\rangle}$. This incidentally shows that $\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}\rangle \in \mathbb{R}$ for all $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$.

Non-negative and Definite:

Suppose that $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}\rangle &= \frac{1}{4}\left(\|\mathbf{v}+\mathbf{v}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{v}-\mathbf{v}\|^2 + i\|\mathbf{v}+i\mathbf{v}\|^2 - i\|\mathbf{v}-i\mathbf{v}\|^2\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{4}\left(\|2\mathbf{v}\|^2 + i\|(1+i)\,\mathbf{v}\|^2 - i\|(1-i)\,\mathbf{v}\|^2\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{4}\left(4\|\mathbf{v}\|^2 + 2i\|\mathbf{v}\|^2 - 2i\|\mathbf{v}\|^2\right) \\
&= \|\mathbf{v}\|^2
\end{aligned}$$

This tells us :

i) $\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}\rangle \geq 0$ since $\|\mathbf{v}\|^2 \geq 0$.

ii) $\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}\rangle = 0$ if and only if $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$ since $\|\mathbf{v}\|^2 = 0$ if and only if $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$.

iii) That once we show that $\langle \cdot, \cdot\rangle$ is an inner product that $\|\cdot\|$ is the induced norm.

Additivity:

We want to show $\langle \mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle = \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w}\rangle + \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle$ for all $\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \in \mathbf{V}$. The parallelogram law doesn't immediately suggest how to prove this. However, we observe that $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ play symmetric roles in the expression $\langle \mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle$. As such, any identity we derive should treat them symmetrically. This guides us to apply the parallelogram law to expressions involving $\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{w}$ and $\mathbf{v}+\mathbf{w}$, which we'll then combine to obtain additivity.
With that in mind, we apply the parallelogram law to obtain the following two equations

$$\left\|\left(\mathbf{u}+\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right)+\left(\mathbf{v}+\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right)\right\|^2 + \left\|\left(\mathbf{u}+\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right)-\left(\mathbf{v}+\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right)\right\|^2 = 2\left\|\mathbf{u}+\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right\|^2 + 2\left\|\mathbf{v}+\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right\|^2 \tag{25.1.3}$$

$$\left\|\left(\mathbf{u}-\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right)+\left(\mathbf{v}-\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right)\right\|^2 + \left\|\left(\mathbf{u}+\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right)-\left(\mathbf{v}+\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right)\right\|^2 = 2\left\|\mathbf{u}-\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right\|^2 + 2\left\|\mathbf{v}-\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right\|^2 \tag{25.1.4}$$

Subtracting eq. (25.1.4) from eq. (25.1.3), we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\left\|\left(\mathbf{u}+\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right)+\left(\mathbf{v}+\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right)\right\|^2 - \left\|\left(\mathbf{u}-\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right)+\left(\mathbf{v}-\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right)\right\|^2 &= 2\left(\left\|\mathbf{u}+\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right\|^2 - \left\|\mathbf{u}-\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right\|^2\right) + 2\left(\left\|\mathbf{v}+\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right\|^2 - \left\|\mathbf{v}-\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right\|^2\right) \\
\|\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}+\mathbf{w}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}-\mathbf{w}\|^2 &= 2\left(\left\|\mathbf{u}+\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right\|^2 - \left\|\mathbf{u}-\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right\|^2\right) + 2\left(\left\|\mathbf{v}+\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right\|^2 - \left\|\mathbf{v}-\frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right\|^2\right)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\mathfrak{Re}\left[\langle \mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right] = 2\mathfrak{Re}\left[\left\langle \mathbf{u}, \frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right\rangle\right] + 2\mathfrak{Re}\left[\left\langle \mathbf{v}, \frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right\rangle\right] \tag{25.1.5}$$

Applying the result of exercise 25.1.11 to eq. (25.1.5) by setting $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$, we have

$$\mathfrak{Re}\left[\langle \mathbf{0}+\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right] = 2\mathfrak{Re}\left[\left\langle \mathbf{0}, \frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right\rangle\right] + 2\mathfrak{Re}\left[\left\langle \mathbf{v}, \frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right\rangle\right]$$

Similarly setting $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$, we have the two equations

$$\boxed{\mathfrak{Re}\left[\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right] = 2\mathfrak{Re}\left[\left\langle \mathbf{v}, \frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right\rangle\right]} \quad \text{and} \quad \boxed{\mathfrak{Re}\left[\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right] = 2\mathfrak{Re}\left[\left\langle \mathbf{v}, \frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right\rangle\right]} \tag{25.1.6}$$

Applying eq. (25.1.6) to eq. (25.1.5), we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathfrak{Re}\left[\langle \mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right] &= \boxed{2\mathfrak{Re}\left[\left\langle \mathbf{v}, \frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right\rangle\right]} + \boxed{2\mathfrak{Re}\left[\left\langle \mathbf{v}, \frac{\mathbf{w}}{2}\right\rangle\right]} \\ &= \boxed{\mathfrak{Re}\left[\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right]} + \boxed{\mathfrak{Re}\left[\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right]}\end{aligned}$$

This shows that $\mathfrak{Re}\left[\langle \mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right]$ is additive. Now we need to show that $\mathfrak{Im}\left[\langle \mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right]$ is additive.

$$\begin{aligned}\mathfrak{Im}\left[\langle \mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right] &= \mathfrak{Re}\left[\langle \mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}, i\mathbf{w}\rangle\right] && \text{By exercise 25.1.10} \\ &= \mathfrak{Re}\left[\langle \mathbf{u}, i\mathbf{w}\rangle\right] + \mathfrak{Re}\left[\langle \mathbf{v}, i\mathbf{w}\rangle\right] \\ &= \mathfrak{Im}\left[\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right] + \mathfrak{Im}\left[\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right]\end{aligned}$$

Finally putting it all together

$$\begin{aligned}\langle \mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle &= \mathfrak{Re}\left[\langle \mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right] + \mathfrak{Im}\left[\langle \mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right] i \\ &= \left(\mathfrak{Re}\left[\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right] + \mathfrak{Re}\left[\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right]\right) + \left(\mathfrak{Im}\left[\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right] + \mathfrak{Im}\left[\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right]\right) i \\ &= \left(\mathfrak{Re}\left[\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right] + \mathfrak{Im}\left[\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right] i\right) + \left(\mathfrak{Re}\left[\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right] + \mathfrak{Im}\left[\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\right] i\right) \\ &= \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w}\rangle + \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\end{aligned}$$

With that, we have shown additivity.

Homogeneity:

We want to show that for each $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$ and $\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \in \mathbf{V}$, we have

$$\langle \lambda\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle = \lambda\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle.$$

The proof proceeds by gradually extending the class of scalars for which homogeneity holds. We first establish the result for $\lambda \in \mathbb{N}$, then extend successively to $\lambda \in \mathbb{Z}$, then $\lambda \in \mathbb{Q}$, then $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$, and finally to $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$.

- **For $\lambda \in \mathbb{N}$:**

  We will prove this by induction while $\lambda = 1$ is a perfectly acceptable base case. However, it is trivial and won't provide us with any insight on how to tackle the inductive step. So let us set the base case $\lambda = 2$.

  Base case: For $\lambda = 2$, we have

  $$\begin{aligned}\langle 2\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle &= \langle \mathbf{u}+\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle \\ &= \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle + \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle && \text{Since we have established additivity.} \\ &= 2\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle\end{aligned}$$

  Inductive step: Suppose that $\langle \lambda\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle = \lambda\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle$. Then

  $$\begin{aligned}\langle (\lambda+1)\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle &= \langle \lambda\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle \\ &= \langle \lambda\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle + \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle \\ &= \lambda\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle + \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle && \text{By the inductive hypothesis} \\ &= (\lambda+1)\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle\end{aligned}$$

  So $\langle \lambda\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle = \lambda\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle$ for every $\lambda \in \mathbb{N}$.

- **For $\lambda \in \mathbb{Z}$:**

  We just need to show the result for negative integers here. In other words, if $\lambda > 0$, then we need to show

  $$\langle -\lambda\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle = -\lambda\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle.$$

  $$\begin{aligned}0 &= \langle 0\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle \\ &= \langle (\lambda-\lambda)\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle \\ &= \langle \lambda\mathbf{u}+(-\lambda)\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle \\ &= \langle \lambda\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle + \langle -\lambda\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle \\ 0 &= \lambda\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle + \langle -\lambda\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle\end{aligned}$$

This shows that $\langle -\lambda \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle = -\lambda \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle$.

- **For $\lambda \in \mathbb{Q}$:**
  Suppose that $\lambda = \dfrac{p}{q}$ for $p, q \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $q > 0$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} p\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle &= \langle p\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle \\ &= \left\langle q\left(\frac{p}{q}\mathbf{u}\right), \mathbf{v}\right\rangle \\ p\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle &= q\left\langle \frac{p}{q}\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\right\rangle \end{aligned}$$

  Dividing both sides by q yields the desired result.

- **For $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$:** This is the trickiest one to show. First, we note that as $|\alpha| \to 0$, we have $||\alpha\mathbf{u}|| \to 0$. Indeed, for any $\epsilon > 0$, if $|\alpha| < \dfrac{\epsilon}{||\mathbf{u}||}$, then $||\alpha\mathbf{u}|| = |\alpha|||\mathbf{u}|| < \epsilon$. (The case $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$ is trivial.) In particular, as $|\alpha| \to 0$, we have $||\alpha\mathbf{u} + \beta\mathbf{v}|| \to |\beta|||\mathbf{v}||$. To see this, note that by the reverse triangle inequality:

$$\begin{aligned} \big|\, ||\alpha\mathbf{u} + \beta\mathbf{v}|| - |\beta|||\mathbf{v}||\, \big| &= \big|\, ||\alpha\mathbf{u} + \beta\mathbf{v}|| - ||\beta\mathbf{v}||\, \big| \\ &\le ||\alpha\mathbf{u} + \beta\mathbf{v} - \beta\mathbf{v}|| \\ &\le ||\alpha\mathbf{u}|| \\ &= |\alpha|||\mathbf{u}|| \to 0. \end{aligned}$$

  With that in mind, we can now prove that for $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$, we have $\langle \lambda\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle = \lambda\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle$. First pick $\mu \in \mathbb{Q}$ such that $|\lambda - \mu| \to 0$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} |\langle \lambda\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle - \lambda\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle| &\le |\langle \lambda\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle - \langle \mu\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle| + |\langle \mu\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle - \mu\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle| + |\mu\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle - \lambda\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle| \\ &= |\langle (\lambda - \mu)\,\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle| + 0 + |(\mu - \lambda)\,\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle| \\ &= |\langle (\lambda - \mu)\,\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle| && \text{(Since } |(\mu - \lambda)\,\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle| \to 0.) \end{aligned}$$

  Now we just need to show that $|\langle (\lambda - \mu)\,\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle| \to 0$ as $|\lambda - \mu| \to 0$.

$$\begin{aligned} |\langle (\lambda - \mu)\,\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle| &= \frac{1}{4}\Big| ||(\lambda - \mu)\,\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}||^2 - ||(\lambda - \mu)\,\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}||^2 + i||(\lambda - \mu)\,\mathbf{u} + i\mathbf{v}||^2 - i||(\lambda - \mu)\,\mathbf{u} - i\mathbf{v}||^2 \Big| \\ &\to \frac{1}{4}\Big| ||\mathbf{v}||^2 - ||\mathbf{v}||^2 + i||\mathbf{v}||^2 - i||\mathbf{v}||^2 \Big| && \text{(By our earlier discussion.)} \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

- **For $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$:**
  It is sufficient to show that $\langle i\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle = i\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle$, since we have demonstrated $\mathbb{R}$-linearity. In other words, if $\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle = a + bi$, we need to show that $\langle i\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle = -b + ai$ or that $\mathfrak{Re}\left[\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle\right] = \mathfrak{Im}\left[\langle i\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle\right]$ and $\mathfrak{Im}\left[\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\right] = -\mathfrak{Re}\left[i\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\right]$. So

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{Re}\left[\langle i\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle\right] &= \mathfrak{Re}\left[\langle \mathbf{v}, i\mathbf{u}\rangle\right] \\ &= \mathfrak{Im}\left[\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}\rangle\right] \\ &= -\mathfrak{Im}\left[\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle\right] \end{aligned}$$

  and

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{Im}\left[\langle i\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle\right] &= \mathfrak{Re}\left[\langle i\mathbf{u}, i\mathbf{v}\rangle\right] \\ &= \mathfrak{Re}\left[\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle\right] && \text{(Use the definition of } \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle) \end{aligned}$$

This shows that $\langle i\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle = i\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle$. Now set $\lambda = \alpha + \beta i$ and we can apply $\mathbb{R}$-linearity

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \lambda\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle &= \langle (\alpha + \beta i)\,\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle \\
&= \langle \alpha\mathbf{u} + \beta i\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle \\
&= \langle \alpha\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle + \langle \beta i\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle \\
&= \alpha\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle + \beta\langle i\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle \\
&= \alpha\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle + \beta i\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle \\
&= (\alpha + \beta i)\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle \\
&= \lambda\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\rangle
\end{aligned}$$

With that, the proof is (finally) complete! ■

§25.2 Orthonormal Bases

Example 25.2.1 (FINISH LATER).
Use the Gram-Schmidt process to orthonormalize the basis $\left\{1, x, x^2, \ldots, x^k, \ldots\right\}$ for the inner product space $\mathcal{P}([a, b])$, where

$$\langle f, g\rangle = \int_a^b f(x)g(x)\,\mathrm{d}x\,.$$

We set $\boxed{f_0(x) = 1}$. Then for $f_1(x)$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
f_1(x) &= x - \frac{\langle x, f_0(x)\rangle}{\langle f_0(x), f_0(x)\rangle} f_0(x) \\
&= x - \frac{\int_a^b x\,\mathrm{d}x}{\int_a^b 1^2\,\mathrm{d}x} \\
&= x - \frac{1}{2}(b - a)
\end{aligned}$$

So $\boxed{f_1(x) = x - \frac{1}{2}(b - a)}$.
For $f_2(x)$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
f_2(x) &= x^2 - \frac{\left\langle x^2, f_0(x)\right\rangle}{\langle f_0(x), f_0(x)\rangle} f_0(x) - \frac{\left\langle x^2, f_1(x)\right\rangle}{\langle f_1(x), f_1(x)\rangle} f_1(x) \\
&= x^2 - \frac{\int_a^b x^2\,\mathrm{d}x}{\int_a^b 1^2\,\mathrm{d}x} - \frac{\int_a^b x^2\left(x - \frac{1}{2}(b - a)\right)\mathrm{d}x}{\int_a^b \left(x - \frac{1}{2}(b - a)\right)^2\mathrm{d}x}\left(x - \frac{1}{2}(b - a)\right)
\end{aligned}$$

26 Symplectic Vector Spaces

While symplectic vector spaces are not usually taught in a first- or second-year linear algebra course, I have elected to include them in a chapter immediately following the chapter on inner products due to the parallels that many of the theorems and proofs share between these two spaces. However, symplectic vector spaces differ from inner product spaces in interesting ways. For example, a finite-dimensional symplectic vector space necessarily has even dimension. This chapter may be skipped without affecting comprehension of subsequent material, but students interested in differential geometry, classical mechanics, or quantum mechanics will benefit from this early exposure.

Definition 26.0.1.
A **linear symplectic form** on a vector space $\mathbf{V}$ is a map $\omega : \mathbf{V} \times \mathbf{V} \to \mathbb{K}$ such that:

i) ω is bilinear on $\mathbf{V}$

ii) ω is skew-symmetric, that is, $\omega(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) = -\omega(\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v})$.

iii) ω is non-degenerate: if $\omega(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) = 0$ for all $\mathbf{w} \in \mathbf{V}$, then $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$.

Theorem 26.0.1 (All symplectic vector spaces have even dimension.)**.**
Let $(\mathbf{V}, \omega)$ be a symplectic vector space. Then:

i) $\dim(\mathbf{V})$ is even

ii) $\mathbf{V}$ admits a **Darboux basis** (or **symplectic basis**) $B = \{\mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{f}_1, \mathbf{e}_2, \mathbf{f}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{e}_n, \mathbf{f}_n\}$ satisfying:

- **a)** $\omega(\mathbf{e}_j, \mathbf{f}_k) = \delta_{jk}$
- **b)** $\omega(\mathbf{e}_j, \mathbf{e}_k) = \omega(\mathbf{f}_j, \mathbf{f}_k) = 0$

Proof.

■

Real Analysis

27 The Real and Complex Number Systems . . . 123
27.1 Incompleteness of the Rational Numbers and the Least Upper Bound Property . . . 123

28 Basic Topology . . . 125
28.1 Metric Spaces . . . 125

29 Sequences and Series . . . 130
29.1 Cauchy Sequences . . . 130

30 Continuity . . . 131

31 Differentiation . . . 132
31.1 The Derivative . . . 132
31.2 The Mean Value Theorems . . . 133

32 Measure Theory . . . 134
32.1 Outer Measure . . . 134

27 The Real and Complex Number Systems

§27.1 Incompleteness of the Rational Numbers and the Least Upper Bound Property

Theorem 27.1.1.
Suppose that $n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ and that $\sqrt{n} \notin \mathbb{Z}$, then $\sqrt{n} \notin \mathbb{Q}$.

Proof.
Let the given be as stated and suppose, for the sake of contradiction, that $\sqrt{n} = \frac{p}{q}$ for some $p, q \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $q > 0$. Now since $\sqrt{n} \notin \mathbb{Z}$, there must exist some $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ for which

$$0 < \sqrt{n} - k < 1$$

holds. Now consider the set

$$S = \left\{ \left(\sqrt{n} - k\right)^j : j = 1, 2, 3 \ldots \right\}.$$

We will note two properties of the elements of S in which the reader should verify by induction.

i) If we set $s_j = \left(\sqrt{n} - k\right)^j$, then

$$s_1 > s_2 > \cdots > s_{j-1} > s_j > s_{j+1} > \cdots$$

ii) All elements s_j of S are of the form $a_j + b_j \cdot \sqrt{n}$ for some $a_j, b_j \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Applying the hypothesis for contradiction to the second observation, we get that all elements of S are of the form

$$a_j + b_j \cdot \sqrt{n} = a_j + b_j \cdot \frac{p}{q} = \frac{a_j \cdot q + b_j \cdot p}{q}.$$

Since $a_j, b_j, p, q \in \mathbb{Z}$ and if we consider the set $Q = \left\{ \frac{r}{q} : r = 1, 2, \ldots \right\}$, we have that $S \subseteq Q$. However, the first observation about elements of S ensures that this cannot be the case. (Why?) The contradiction establishes the result. ■

Lemma 27.1.2.
Suppose that $n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ and $\sqrt{n} \notin \mathbb{Q}$. Consider the sets

$$A = \left\{ x \in \mathbb{Q}^+ : x^2 < n \right\} \quad B = \left\{ x \in \mathbb{Q}^+ : x^2 > n \right\}.$$

Then A has no maximal element and B has no minimal element.

Proof.
Let the given be as stated, and pick $p \in A \cup B$. Define an element q given by

$$q = p - \frac{p^2 - n}{p + n}.$$

We simplify q as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} q &= \frac{p \cdot (p + n)}{p + n} - \frac{p^2 - n}{p + n} \\ &= \frac{p^2 + n \cdot p - p^2 + n}{p + n} \\ &= \frac{n \cdot p + n}{p + n} \end{aligned}$$

Now, we compute $q^2 - n$.

$$\begin{aligned}
q^2 - n &= \left(\frac{n \cdot p + n}{p + n}\right)^2 - n \\
&= \frac{(n \cdot p + n)^2}{(p + n)^2} - \frac{n \cdot (p + n)^2}{(p + n)^2} \\
&= \frac{n^2 \cdot p^2 + 2n^2 \cdot p + n^2 - n \cdot p^2 - 2n^2 \cdot p - n^3}{(p + n)^2} \\
&= \frac{n^2 \cdot p^2 - n \cdot p^2 - \left(n^3 - n^2\right)}{(p + n)^2} \\
&= \frac{n \cdot p^2 \cdot (n - 1) - n^2 \cdot (n - 1)}{(p + n)^2} \\
q^2 - n &= \left(n^2 - n\right) \cdot \frac{p^2 - n}{(p + n)^2}
\end{aligned}$$

Now if $p \in A$, our last equation shows that $q \in A$ and the first equation shows that $q > p$. If $p \in B$, our last equation shows that $q \in B$ and the first equation shows that $q < p$. ■

Definition 27.1.1.
Suppose that S is an ordered set. We say that $A \subseteq S$ is **bounded above** if there exists some $x \in S$ such that for all $a \in A$, we have that $a \leq x$. We call x an **upper bound** for A.
The definition for a set that is **bounded below** and an element that is a **lower bound** is similar.

Definition 27.1.2.
Suppose that S is an ordered set and $A \subset S$ is bounded above. If there is some upper bound $\alpha \in S$ with the property that if $\gamma < \alpha$ then γ is not an upper bound for A, we refer to α as the **least upper bound** or the **supremum** of A and we write

$$\alpha = \sup (A) .$$

Similarly, if A is bounded below and there is some lower bound β such that if $\gamma > \beta$ then γ is not a lower bound of A, we will call β the **greatest lower bound** or the **infimum** of A and we write

$$\beta = \inf (A).$$

If **every** subset of S that has an upper bound also has a least upper bound, we say that S has the **least upper bound property**. If every subset of S that has a lower bound also has greatest lower bound, we say that S has the **greatest lower bound property**.

Lemma 27.1.3.
Every set with the least upper bound property has the greatest lower bound property.

Proof.
Let S be a non-empty set with least upper bound property and suppose that $A \subset S$ is bounded below. Since A is bounded below, the set

$$B = \{x \in S : x \leq a \text{ for every } a \in A\}$$

is well-defined and non-empty. By definition, every element of A is an upper bound for B. So B is bounded above and since S has the least upper bound property, the supremum, call it γ, of B exists. I claim that $\gamma = \inf (A)$. We need to show that:

i) γ is a lower bound of A;

ii) if $\eta > \gamma$, then η is not a lower bound of A.

For the first part, suppose that γ is **not** a lower bound of A. Then there is some $a \in A$, such that $a < \gamma$. But since every element of A is an upper bound of B, we have found an upper bound of B less than γ, which contradicts that γ is the **least** upper bound. So γ is a lower bound of A.
For the second part suppose that $\eta > \gamma$ and that η is a lower bound of A. It follows, by definition, that $\eta \in B$. This contradicts that γ is an upper bound of B, as we have just found an element of B, namely η, for which $\eta > \gamma$. So γ is the greatest lower bound of A. ■

28 Basic Topology

§28.1 Metric Spaces

Definition 28.1.1.
Let M be a set. A **metric** on M is a map $\rho : M \times M \to [0, \infty)$ such that the following criteria are held:

i) $\rho(x, y) = 0$ if and only if $x = y$.

ii) $\rho(x, y) = \rho(y, x)$ for every $x, y \in M$.

iii) $\rho(x, z) \leq \rho(x, y) + \rho(y, z)$, this is called the **triangle inequality**.

We call the pair (M, ρ) a **metric space**. We will often omit mention of ρ if it is understood in context or mention of ρ is unnecessary.

Lemma 28.1.1.
A metric is non-negative. That is;

$$\rho(x, y) \geq 0$$

for all $x, y \in M$.

Proof.

$$\begin{aligned} \rho(x, x) &\leq \rho(x, y) + \rho(y, x) && \text{(By the triangle ineqality)} \\ \rho(x, x) &\leq 2\rho(x, y) \\ 0 &\leq 2\rho(x, y) \\ 0 &\leq \rho(x, y) \end{aligned}$$

■

Definition 28.1.2.
Let M be a metric space and define the **ϵ-ball centered at x** to be

$$B_\rho(x; \epsilon) = \{y \in M : \rho(x, y) < \epsilon\}$$

The **topology induced by the metric** is a topological space on M with a basis consisting of all possible ϵ-balls centered at every $x \in M$.

Lemma 28.1.2.
The basis described above is indeed a basis.

Proof.
We will verify that the conditions of Definition 39.3.1 hold. Suppose that M is a metric space with basis elements. $\{B_\rho(x; \epsilon) : x \in M, \epsilon$
By definition, every element of M belongs to some basis element. So we just need to verify the intersection condition of the basis. Suppose that we fix $x_1, x_2 \in M$, $\epsilon_1, \epsilon_2 \in \mathbb{R}$ such that

$$B_\rho(x_1; \epsilon_1) \cap B_\rho(x_2; \epsilon_2) \neq \varnothing.$$

Pick any $y \in B_\rho(x_1; \epsilon_1) \cap B_\rho(x_2; \epsilon_2)$ and let

$$\epsilon < \min\{\epsilon_1 - \rho(x_1, y), \epsilon_2 - \rho(x_2, y)\}.$$

I claim that $B_\rho(y;\epsilon) \subseteq B_\rho(x_1;\epsilon_1) \cap B_\rho(x_2;\epsilon_2)$. To show this pick any $z \in B_\rho(y;\epsilon)$, then

$$\begin{aligned} \rho(x_1, z) &\leq \rho(x_1, y) + \rho(y, z) \\ &< \rho(x_1, y) + \epsilon_1 - \rho(x_1, y) && \text{(Since } z \in B_\rho(y, \epsilon)\text{)} \\ &< \epsilon_1 \end{aligned}$$

so $z \in B_\rho(x_1;\epsilon_1)$. Showing $z \in B_\rho(x_2;\epsilon_2)$ is similar. So $z \in B_\rho(x_1;\epsilon_1) \cap B_\rho(x_2;\epsilon_2)$, which shows that $B_\rho(y;\epsilon) \subseteq B_\rho(x_1;\epsilon_1) \cap B_\rho(x_2;\epsilon_2)$ ■

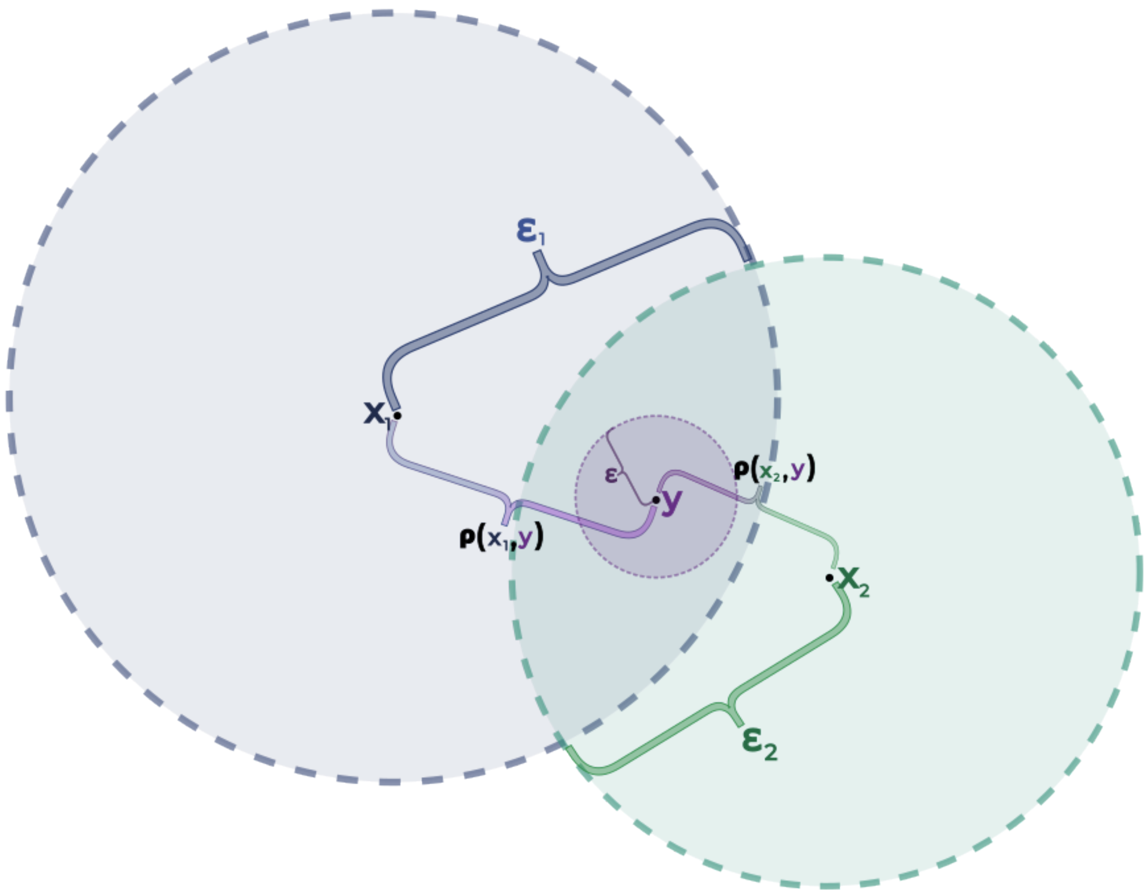


Figure 28.1: Given $y \in B_\rho(x_1;\varepsilon_1) \cap B_\rho(x_2;\varepsilon_2)$, we choose ε small enough so that $B_\rho(y;\varepsilon) \subseteq B_\rho(x_1;\varepsilon_1) \cap B_\rho(x_2;\varepsilon_2)$, verifying the basis intersection property for the topology induced by a metric.

Lemma 28.1.3 (Generalized Triangle Inequality).
For any $x_1, \ldots, x_n$ in a metric space M, we have

$$\rho(x_1, x_n) \leq \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} \rho(x_j, x_{j+1}).$$

Proof.
We prove this by induction on n.
Although the base cases of $n = 2$ or $n = 3$ trivially hold, we will set the base case to be $n = 4$ for illustrative purposes. **Base case:** Let $n = 4$. Suppose $x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \in M$. Then:

$$\begin{aligned} \rho(x_1, x_4) &\leq \rho(x_1, x_3) + \rho(x_3, x_4) && \text{[triangle inequality on } x_1, x_3, x_4\text{]} \\ &\leq \rho(x_1, x_2) + \rho(x_2, x_3) + \rho(x_3, x_4) && \text{[triangle inequality on } x_1, x_2, x_3\text{]} \end{aligned}$$

Inductive step: Assume the inequality holds for $n-1$, i.e.,

$$\rho(x_1, x_{n-1}) \le \sum_{j=1}^{n-2} \rho(x_j, x_{j+1}).$$

Then:

$$\begin{aligned}
\rho(x_1, x_n) &\le \rho(x_1, x_{n-1}) + \rho(x_{n-1}, x_n) && \text{[triangle inequality]}\\
&\le \sum_{j=1}^{n-2} \rho(x_j, x_{j+1}) + \rho(x_{n-1}, x_n) && \text{[by induction hypothesis]}\\
&= \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} \rho(x_j, x_{j+1}) && \text{[combine and reindex]}
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the inequality holds for all $n \ge 2$. ■

Corollary.

$$|\rho(w, x) - \rho(y, z)| \le \rho(x, y) + \rho(w, z)$$

Proof.
Applying the generalized triangle inequality, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\rho(w, x) &\le \rho(w, z) + \rho(z, y) + \rho(y, x)\\
\rho(w, x) - \rho(y, z) &\le \rho(x, y) + \rho(w, z)\\
|\rho(w, x) - \rho(y, z)| &\le |\rho(x, y) + \rho(w, z)|\\
|\rho(w, x) - \rho(y, z)| &\le \rho(x, y) + \rho(w, z)
\end{aligned}$$

■

Example 28.1.1 (Euclidean Metric on $\mathbb{R}^n$).
Let $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \ldots, x_n), \mathbf{y} = (y_1, \ldots, y_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n$. We define the standard Euclidean metric on $\mathbb{R}^n$ to be

$$\rho(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) := \sqrt{\sum_{j=1}^{n} (x_j - y_j)^2}$$

We need only to verify **iii** of Definition 28.1.1 as **i** and **ii** are fairly easy to see. Let $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \ldots, x_n), \mathbf{y} = (y_1, \ldots, y_n), \mathbf{z} = (z_1, \ldots, z_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n$

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{j=1}^{n} (x_j - z_j)^2 &= \sum_{j=1}^{n} (x_j - y_j + y_j - z_j)^2\\
&= \sum_{j=1}^{n} (x_j - y_j)^2 + \sum_{j=1}^{n} (y_j - z_j)^2 + 2\sum_{j=1}^{n} (x_j - y_j)(y_j - z_j)\\
&\le \sum_{j=1}^{n} (x_j - y_j)^2 + \sum_{j=1}^{n} (y_j - z_j)^2 + 2\sqrt{\sum_{j=1}^{n} (x_j - y_j)^2}\sqrt{\sum_{j=1}^{n} (y_j - z_j)^2} && \text{(Applying the Cauchy–Schwarz Inequality)}
\end{aligned}$$

This gives

$$\sum_{j=1}^{n} (x_j - z_j)^2 \le \sum_{j=1}^{n} (x_j - y_j)^2 + \sum_{j=1}^{n} (y_j - z_j)^2 + 2\sqrt{\sum_{j=1}^{n} (x_j - y_j)^2}\sqrt{\sum_{j=1}^{n} (y_j - z_j)^2}$$

or

$$\sum_{j=1}^{n} (x_j - z_j)^2 \le \left(\sqrt{\sum_{j=1}^{n} (x_j - y_j)^2} + \sqrt{\sum_{j=1}^{n} (y_j - z_j)^2}\right)^2$$

Taking the square root of both sides verifies the triangle inequality

$$\sqrt{\sum_{j=1}^{n}\left(x_j - z_j\right)^2} \leq \sqrt{\sum_{j=1}^{n}\left(x_j - y_j\right)^2} + \sqrt{\sum_{j=1}^{n}\left(y_j - z_j\right)^2}$$

Example 28.1.2.
Let S be the set of all complex-valued sequences. Define a metric on S by

$$\rho\left(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}\right) = \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^j} \cdot \frac{\left|x_j - y_j\right|}{1 + \left|x_j - y_j\right|}.$$

Much like the previous example, we will verify the triangle inequality. Consider the function

$$f(t) = \frac{t}{1+t},$$

which is increasing on $[0, \infty)$ since

$$f'(t) = \frac{1}{(1+t)^2} > 0.$$

Therefore, by the triangle inequality $|a+b| \leq |a| + |b|$, we have

$$f\left(|a+b|\right) \leq f\left(|a| + |b|\right) = f\left(|a|\right) + f\left(|b|\right).$$

Setting $a = z_j - y_j$ and $b = y_j - x_j$, we get:

$$\begin{aligned} f\left(\left|z_j - x_j\right|\right) &\leq f\left(\left|z_j - y_j\right|\right) + f\left(\left|y_j - x_j\right|\right) \\ \frac{1}{2^j} f\left(\left|z_j - x_j\right|\right) &\leq \frac{1}{2^j} f\left(\left|z_j - y_j\right|\right) + \frac{1}{2^j} f\left(\left|y_j - x_j\right|\right) \end{aligned}$$

Summing over all $j \in \mathbb{N}$, we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^j} f\left(\left|z_j - x_j\right|\right) &\leq \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^j} f\left(\left|z_j - y_j\right|\right) + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^j} f\left(\left|y_j - x_j\right|\right) \\ \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^j} \cdot \frac{\left|z_j - x_j\right|}{1 + \left|z_j - x_j\right|} &\leq \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^j} \cdot \frac{\left|z_j - y_j\right|}{1 + \left|z_j - y_j\right|} + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^j} \cdot \frac{\left|y_j - x_j\right|}{1 + \left|y_j - x_j\right|} \\ \rho(\mathbf{z}, \mathbf{x}) &\leq \rho(\mathbf{z}, \mathbf{y}) + \rho(\mathbf{y}, \mathbf{x}). \end{aligned}$$

Hence, the triangle inequality holds.

Lemma 28.1.4.
Let $\mathbf{V}$ be a normed space. Then $\mathbf{V}$ has a **metric induced by the norm** defined by

$$\rho\left(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}\right) := \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}\| \quad \text{for all } \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \in \mathbf{V}.$$

Proof.
We want to show that $\rho\left(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}\right) = \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}\|$ defines a metric.
Suppose that $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{y}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \rho\left(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}\right) &= \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}\| \\ &= \|\mathbf{0}\| \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

So $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{y} \Longrightarrow \rho\left(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}\right) = 0$. Conversely, if $\rho\left(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}\right) = 0$ then $\|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}\| = 0$ so $\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y} = \mathbf{0}$ or $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{y}$.

For symmetry,

$$\begin{aligned}\rho(\mathbf{y},\mathbf{x}) &= \|\mathbf{y}-\mathbf{x}\| \\ &= \|-1(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{y})\| \\ &= |-1|\|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{y}\| \\ &= \|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{y}\| \\ &= \rho(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{y})\end{aligned}$$

Finally, for the triangle inequality,

$$\begin{aligned}\rho(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{z}) &= \|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{z}\| \\ &= \|(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{y})+(\mathbf{y}-\mathbf{z})\| \\ &\le \|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{y}\| + \|\mathbf{y}-\mathbf{z}\| \\ &= \rho(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{y})+\rho(\mathbf{y},\mathbf{z})\end{aligned}$$

So $\rho(\mathbf{x}.\mathbf{z}) \le \rho(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{y})+\rho(\mathbf{y},\mathbf{z})$.
So $\rho(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{y}) = \|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{y}\|$ defines a metric. ■

Exercise 28.1.1.
Show that in a normed space $|\ \|\mathbf{x}\| - \|\mathbf{y}\|\ | \le \|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{y}\|$.

Solution.
We can define the metric ρ induced by the norm as $\rho(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{y}) := \|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{y}\|$. As such, we wish to show that $|\rho(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{0}) - \rho(\mathbf{y},\mathbf{0})| \le \rho(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{y})$. This is straightforward.

$$\begin{aligned}\rho(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{0}) &\le \rho(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{y})+\rho(\mathbf{y},\mathbf{0}) && \text{By the triangle inequality.} \\ \rho(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{0})-\rho(\mathbf{y},\mathbf{0}) &\le \rho(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{y})\end{aligned}$$

Applying the absolute value to both sides resolves this exercise. ●

29 Sequences and Series

§29.1 Cauchy Sequences

Definition 29.1.1.
A sequence $\{x_n\}$ in a metric space (M, ρ) is said to be a **Cauchy sequence** if for all $\epsilon > 0$, there exists an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that if $m, n > N$ then

$$\rho(x_m, x_n) < \epsilon$$

Lemma 29.1.1.
If $\{x_n\}$ is a Cauchy sequence in a metric space (M, ρ), then for all $y \in M$, there exists an $\epsilon_y \in \mathbb{R}$ such that every element of the sequence is contained in the closed ball $\overline{B_\rho(y; \epsilon_y)}$.

Proof.

■

Definition 29.1.2.
A metric space M is said to be **complete** if every Cauchy sequence converges to a point in M.

30 Continuity

31 Differentiation

§31.1 The Derivative

Theorem 31.1.1 (The Chain Rule).
Suppose $f : [a, b] \to [c, d]$ is continuous and that it is differentiable at x. Also $g : I \to \mathbb{R}$ (where $[c, d] \subseteq I$) is continuous and that it is differentiable at $f(x)$. Then the composition function $g \circ f : [a, b] \to \mathbb{R}$ is differentiable at x and

$$(g \circ f)'(x) = g'(f(x)) \cdot f'(x).$$

Proof.
Our goal is to verify that the following limit

$$\lim_{t \to x} \frac{g(f(t)) - g(f(x))}{t - x}$$

exists and equals $(g \circ f)'(x) = g'(f(x)) \cdot f'(x)$.
Since g is differentiable at $f(x)$, the limit

$$\lim_{y \to f(x)} \frac{g(y) - g(f(x))}{y - f(x)}$$

exists and equals $g'(f(x))$. As such, we can define a continuous auxiliary function

$$\Psi(y) := \begin{cases} \dfrac{g(y) - g(f(x))}{y - f(x)} & y \neq f(x) \\ g'(f(x)) & y = f(x) \end{cases}$$

Note that Ψ is continuous at $f(x)$ since

$$\lim_{y \to f(x)} \Psi(y) = \lim_{y \to f(x)} \frac{g(y) - g(f(x))}{y - f(x)} = g'(f(x)) = \Psi(f(x)).$$

For $y \neq f(x)$, we have

$$g(y) - g(f(x)) = \Psi(y)\left(y - f(x)\right).$$

This equation also holds when $y = f(x)$ since both sides equal 0.
Letting $y = f(t)$, we have

$$g(f(t)) - g(f(x)) = \Psi(f(t))\left(f(t) - f(x)\right).$$

Now we can divide both sides by $t - x$ (for $t \neq x$) to get

$$\frac{g(f(t)) - g(f(x))}{t - x} = \Psi(f(t)) \frac{f(t) - f(x)}{t - x}$$

Finally we can take the limit as $t \to x$ of both sides

$$\begin{aligned}
\lim_{t \to x} \frac{g(f(t)) - g(f(x))}{t - x} &= \lim_{t \to x} \left[\Psi(f(t)) \cdot \frac{f(t) - f(x)}{t - x}\right] \\
&= \left(\lim_{t \to x} \Psi(f(t))\right)\left(\lim_{t \to x} \frac{f(t) - f(x)}{t - x}\right) && \text{(Since both limits exist)} \\
&= \Psi\left(\lim_{t \to x} f(t)\right)\left(\lim_{t \to x} \frac{f(t) - f(x)}{t - x}\right) && \text{(By continuity of } \Psi \text{ and } f\text{)} \\
&= \Psi(f(x))\left(\lim_{t \to x} \frac{f(t) - f(x)}{t - x}\right) \\
&= g'(f(x))\left(\lim_{t \to x} \frac{f(t) - f(x)}{t - x}\right) \\
&= g'(f(x)) \cdot f'(x) && \text{(Since } f \text{ is differentiable at } x\text{)}
\end{aligned}$$

So we have shown that

$$\lim_{t\to x}\frac{g(f(t))-g(f(x))}{t-x}$$

exists and equals $g'(f(x))\cdot f'(x)$, as desired. ■

§31.2 The Mean Value Theorems

Definition 31.2.1.
Suppose that f is a continuous real-valued function. We say that f attains a **local maximum** at p if there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that $f(p) \geq f(q)$ whenever $q \in B(p;\delta)$.

Similarly, we say that f attains a **local minimum** at p if there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that $f(p) \leq f(q)$ whenever $q \in B(p;\delta)$.

Theorem 31.2.1.
Suppose that $f : [a,b] \to \mathbb{R}$ is differentiable on (a,b). If f attains a local maximum or minimum at x, then $f'(x) = 0$.

Proof.
Let the givens be as stated and suppose that f attains a local maximum at $x \in (a,b)$. Then there is a $\delta > 0$ such that whenever $t \in B(x,\delta)$, we have $f(x) \geq f(t)$.

First suppose that $x-\delta < t < x$. Then $f(x)-f(t) \geq 0$ and $x-t > 0$, so

$$\frac{f(x)-f(t)}{x-t} \geq 0 \tag{31.2.1}$$

as it is the quotient of two non-negative numbers where the denominator is positive.

On the other hand, if $x < t < x+\delta$, then $f(x)-f(t) \geq 0$ and $x-t < 0$, so

$$\frac{f(x)-f(t)}{x-t} \leq 0 \tag{31.2.2}$$

as it is the quotient of a non-negative and negative number.

Since f is differentiable at x, the limit

$$f'(x) = \lim_{t\to x}\frac{f(x)-f(t)}{x-t}$$

exists. By Equation (31.2.1), we have

$$f'(x) = \lim_{t\to x^-}\frac{f(x)-f(t)}{x-t} \geq 0$$

and by Equation (31.2.2), we have

$$f'(x) = \lim_{t\to x^+}\frac{f(x)-f(t)}{x-t} \leq 0$$

Since both one-sided limits equal $f'(x)$, we must have $f'(x) = 0$.

The case where f attains a local minimum at x follows by similar reasoning, with the inequalities reversed. ■

32 Measure Theory

§32.1 Outer Measure

Definition 32.1.1.
Let I be a basis element of the standard topology on $\mathbb{R}$, where basis elements are intervals of the form (a, b), $(-\infty, b)$, (a, ∞), or $\mathbb{R} = (-\infty, \infty)$. We define the **length** of I to be

$$\ell(I) = \begin{cases} b - a & \text{if } I = (a, b), \\ 0 & \text{if } I = \varnothing, \\ \infty & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Definition 32.1.2.
Let $A \subset \mathbb{R}$. The **outer measure** of A, denoted $m^*(A)$, is defined by

$$m^*(A) = \inf \left\{ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \ell(I_k) \;\middle|\; A \subseteq \bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} I_k,\ I_k \text{ are open} \right\}.$$

Complex Analysis

33 Complex Numbers 137

34 Complex Differentiation 138
34.1 The Complex Derivative and the Cauchy-Riemann equations 138

33 Complex Numbers

Theorem 33.0.1 (Euler's Formula).

$$e^{i\theta} = \cos(\theta) + i\sin(\theta)$$

Proof.
Consider the power series representation of e^x:

$$e^x = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^j}{j!}$$

Substituting $x = i\theta$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
e^{i\theta} &= \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{(i\theta)^j}{j!} \\
&= \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{(i\theta)^{2j}}{(2j)!} + \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{(i\theta)^{2j+1}}{(2j+1)!} && \text{(separating even and odd terms)} \\
&= \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{i^{2j}\theta^{2j}}{(2j)!} + \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{i^{2j+1}\theta^{2j+1}}{(2j+1)!} \\
&= \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^j\theta^{2j}}{(2j)!} + i\sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^j\theta^{2j+1}}{(2j+1)!} && \text{(since } i^{2j} = (-1)^j \text{ and } i^{2j+1} = i(-1)^j\text{)} \\
&= \cos(\theta) + i\sin(\theta)
\end{aligned}$$

The last equality follows from the Taylor series expansions:

$$\cos(\theta) = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^j\theta^{2j}}{(2j)!} \quad \text{and} \quad \sin(\theta) = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^j\theta^{2j+1}}{(2j+1)!}$$

Note that this manipulation is justified by the absolute convergence of the exponential series for all complex numbers. ■

34 Complex Differentiation

§34.1 The Complex Derivative and the Cauchy-Riemann equations

Definition 34.1.1.
Suppose that U is an open subset of $\mathbb{C}$ and $f : U \to \mathbb{C}$. We say that f is **differentiable** at $z_0 \in U$ if

$$\lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(z_0 + h) - f(z_0)}{h}$$

exists and is finite. We denote this limit by $f'(z_0)$.

We can consider $f(z)$ has having a real and imaginary part. That is, $f(z) = u(x, y) + iv(x, y)$ where $u, v : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}$ and $z = x + iy$.

Theorem 34.1.1 (The Cauchy-Riemann Equations).
Let $f : U \to \mathbb{C}$ where U is an open subset of $\mathbb{C}$, and write $f(z) = u(x, y) + iv(x, y)$ with $z = x + iy$. Suppose u and v have continuous partial derivatives in U. Then f is complex differentiable at z if and only if the **Cauchy-Riemann equations** hold at z:

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial v}{\partial y}, \quad \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} = -\frac{\partial v}{\partial x}$$

Proof.
($\Longrightarrow$) If f is complex differentiable at z, then

$$f'(z) = \lim_{\Delta z \to 0} \frac{f(z + \Delta z) - f(z)}{\Delta z}$$

exists and is finite. Letting $\Delta z = \Delta x + i\Delta y$, we have

$$f'(z) = \lim_{(\Delta x, \Delta y) \to (0,0)} \frac{u(x + \Delta x, y + \Delta y) + iv(x + \Delta x, y + \Delta y) - u(x, y) - iv(x, y)}{\Delta x + i\Delta y}$$

Since the limit is independent of the path chosen, we first choose the path with $\Delta y = 0$:

$$f'(z) = \lim_{\Delta x \to 0} \frac{u(x + \Delta x, y) + iv(x + \Delta x, y) - u(x, y) - iv(x, y)}{\Delta x}$$

Separating real and imaginary parts:

$$f'(z) = \lim_{\Delta x \to 0} \frac{u(x + \Delta x, y) - u(x, y)}{\Delta x} + i \lim_{\Delta x \to 0} \frac{v(x + \Delta x, y) - v(x, y)}{\Delta x}$$

Therefore:

$$\boxed{f'(z) = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + i\frac{\partial v}{\partial x}}$$

Now choosing the path with $\Delta x = 0$:

$$f'(z) = \lim_{\Delta y \to 0} \frac{u(x, y + \Delta y) + iv(x, y + \Delta y) - u(x, y) - iv(x, y)}{i\Delta y}$$

Factoring out $\frac{1}{i} = -i$:

$$f'(z) = \lim_{\Delta y \to 0} (-i) \left[\frac{u(x, y + \Delta y) - u(x, y)}{\Delta y} + i\frac{v(x, y + \Delta y) - v(x, y)}{\Delta y} \right]$$

Therefore:

$$\boxed{f'(z) = -i\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y}}$$

Since both expressions equal $f'(z)$, we have:

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + i\frac{\partial v}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} - i\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}$$

Equating real and imaginary parts:

$$\boxed{\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial v}{\partial y}, \quad \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} = -\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}}$$

($\Longleftarrow$) Now suppose the Cauchy-Riemann equations hold and u, v have continuous partial derivatives. We need to show that

$$\lim_{\Delta z \to 0} \frac{f(z+\Delta z) - f(z)}{\Delta z}$$

exists. Let $\Delta z = \Delta x + i\Delta y$. Since u and v are differentiable (having continuous partial derivatives), we can write:

$$\begin{aligned} u(x+\Delta x, y+\Delta y) - u(x,y) &= \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\Delta x + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\Delta y + \epsilon_1(\Delta x, \Delta y)|\Delta z| \\ v(x+\Delta x, y+\Delta y) - v(x,y) &= \frac{\partial v}{\partial x}\Delta x + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y}\Delta y + \epsilon_2(\Delta x, \Delta y)|\Delta z| \end{aligned}$$

where $\epsilon_1, \epsilon_2 \to 0$ as $(\Delta x, \Delta y) \to (0,0)$.

Therefore:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{f(z+\Delta z) - f(z)}{\Delta z} &= \frac{u(x+\Delta x, y+\Delta y) - u(x,y) + i\left(v(x+\Delta x, y+\Delta y) - v(x,y)\right)}{\Delta x + i\Delta y} \\ &= \frac{\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\Delta x + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\Delta y + \epsilon_1(\Delta x, \Delta y)|\Delta z| + i\left(\frac{\partial v}{\partial x}\Delta x + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y}\Delta y + \epsilon_2(\Delta x, \Delta y)|\Delta z|\right)}{\Delta x + i\Delta y} \\ &= \frac{\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + i\frac{\partial v}{\partial x}\right)\Delta x + \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + i\frac{\partial v}{\partial y}\right)\Delta y + \epsilon(\Delta z)|\Delta z|}{\Delta x + i\Delta y} \end{aligned}$$

where $\epsilon(\Delta z) = \epsilon_1(\Delta x, \Delta y) + i\epsilon_2(\Delta x, \Delta y) \to 0$ as $\Delta z = \Delta x + i\Delta y \to 0$.

Using the Cauchy-Riemann equations $\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial v}{\partial y}$ and $\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} = -\frac{\partial v}{\partial x}$:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{f(z+\Delta z) - f(z)}{\Delta z} &= \frac{\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + i\frac{\partial v}{\partial x}\right)\Delta x + \left(-\frac{\partial v}{\partial x} + i\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)\Delta y + \epsilon(\Delta z)|\Delta z|}{\Delta x + i\Delta y} \\ &= \frac{\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + i\frac{\partial v}{\partial x}\right)(\Delta x + i\Delta y) + \epsilon(\Delta z)|\Delta z|}{\Delta x + i\Delta y} \\ &= \frac{\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + i\frac{\partial v}{\partial x}\right)(\Delta x + i\Delta y)}{\Delta x + i\Delta y} + \frac{\epsilon(\Delta z)|\Delta z|}{\Delta z} \\ &= \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + i\frac{\partial v}{\partial x} + \epsilon(\Delta z)\frac{|\Delta z|}{\Delta z} \end{aligned}$$

Since $\left|\frac{|\Delta z|}{\Delta z}\right| = 1$, we have:

$$\lim_{\Delta z \to 0}\left|\frac{f(z+\Delta z) - f(z)}{\Delta z} - \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + i\frac{\partial v}{\partial x}\right)\right| = \lim_{\Delta z \to 0}|\epsilon(\Delta z)| = 0$$

Therefore $f'(z) = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + i\frac{\partial v}{\partial x}$ exists.

■

Geometric interpretation: The Jacobian matrix of f viewed as a real function $(x,y) \mapsto (u(x,y), v(x,y))$ is:

$$J_f = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \\ \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} & -\frac{\partial v}{\partial x} \\ \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \end{bmatrix}$$

This matrix represents multiplication by the complex number $\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + i\frac{\partial v}{\partial x} = f'(z)$, showing that complex differentiability corresponds to similarity transformations (combinations of scaling and rotation) in the plane.

Group Theory

35 Groups: Definitions and Examples 143
35.1 Axioms and Basic Results 143
35.2 Symmetric Groups 145
35.3 Dihedral Group 146
35.4 Matrix groups 151

36 Group Actions 152
36.1 Definitions, Basic Results, and Examples 152
36.2 Automorphisms 154

37 Direct and Semidirect Products 156
37.1 Semidirect Products 156

35 Groups: Definitions and Examples

§35.1 Axioms and Basic Results

Definition 35.1.1.
Let G be a non-empty set. $* : G \times G \to G$ is a **binary operation** and we write $a * b$ instead of $*(a, b)$. G is called a **group** if the following hold:

i) G is **associative**. For every $a, b, c \in G$, we have $(a * b) * c = a * (b * c)$.

ii) There exists an element $e \in G$ called the **identity element** with the property that every $g \in G$, we have $e * g = g * e = g$.

iii) For every $g \in G$, there is an associated element g^{-1} called the **inverse** with the property that $g * g^{-1} = g^{-1} * g = e$.

If for every $g, h \in G$, we have $g * h = h * g$, we say the group is **abelian** and the operations is commutative.

Example 35.1.1.
$\mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Q}, \mathbb{R}$, and $\mathbb{C}$ are all groups under addition with $e = 0$ and $x^{-1} = -x$.

Lemma 35.1.1.
The identity of a group G is unique.

Proof.
Suppose that G is a group and e as well as e' are both identity elements of G. Then

$$\begin{aligned} e &= e * e' && \text{(Since } e' \text{ is an identity element.)} \\ &= e' && \text{(Since } e \text{ is an identity element.)} \end{aligned}$$

■

Lemma 35.1.2.
For every $g \in G$, g^{-1} is unique.

Proof.
Very similar to the previous proof, we will assume that g^{-1} and g'^{-1} are both inverse to g. So we have

$$\begin{aligned} g^{-1} &= g^{-1} * e \\ &= g^{-1} * \left(g * g'^{-1}\right) \\ &= \left(g^{-1} * g\right) * g'^{-1} \\ &= g'^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

■

Corollary.
$\left(g^{-1}\right)^{-1} = g$.

Lemma 35.1.3.
For every $g, h \in G$, $(g * h)^{-1} = h^{-1} * g^{-1}$.

Proof.

$$\begin{aligned}
(g * h) * (g * h)^{-1} &= e && \text{(By definition)} \\
g^{-1} * \left[(g * h) * (g * h)^{-1}\right] &= g^{-1} * e && \text{(Applying } g^{-1} \text{ to both sides)} \\
\left(g^{-1} * g\right) * h * (g * h)^{-1} &= g^{-1} && \text{(By associativity)} \\
h * (g * h)^{-1} &= g^{-1} \\
h^{-1} * \left[h * (g * h)^{-1}\right] &= h^{-1} * g^{-1} \\
\left(h^{-1} * h\right) * (g * h)^{-1} &= h^{-1} * g^{-1} \\
(g * h)^{-1} &= h^{-1} * g^{-1}.
\end{aligned}$$

■

Exercise 35.1.1.
Suppose that G and H are groups. Then $G \times H$ can be made into a group with

$$(g_1, h_1) \underset{G\times H}{*} (g_2, h_2) := \left(g_1 \underset{G}{*} g_2, h_1 \underset{H}{*} h_2\right).$$

Solution.
We will verify each of the group axioms.

i) For associativity, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\left[(g_1, h_1) \underset{G\times H}{*} (g_2, h_2)\right] \underset{G\times H}{*} (g_3, h_3) &= \left(g_1 \underset{G}{*} g_2, h_1 \underset{H}{*} h_2\right) \underset{G\times H}{*} (g_3, h_3) \\
&= \left(\left(g_1 \underset{G}{*} g_2\right) \underset{G}{*} g_3, \left(h_1 \underset{H}{*} h_2\right) \underset{H}{*} h_3\right) \\
&= \left(g_1 \underset{G}{*} \left(g_2 \underset{G}{*} g_3\right), h_1 \underset{H}{*} \left(h_2 \underset{H}{*} h_3\right)\right) \\
&= (g_1, h_1) \underset{G\times H}{*} \left(g_2 \underset{G}{*} g_3, h_2 \underset{H}{*} h_3\right) \\
&= (g_1, h_1) \underset{G\times H}{*} \left[(g_2, h_2) \underset{G\times H}{*} (g_3, h_3)\right]
\end{aligned}$$

ii) We choose the identity element to be (e_G, e_H). Then

$$(g, h) \underset{G\times H}{*} (e_G, e_H) = \left(g \underset{G}{*} e_G, h \underset{H}{*} e_H\right) = (g, h)$$

iii) For the inverse element of (g, h), we choose $\left(g^{-1}, h^{-1}\right)$.

$$(g, h) \underset{G\times H}{*} \left(g^{-1}, h^{-1}\right) = \left(g \underset{G}{*} g^{-1}, h \underset{H}{*} h^{-1}\right) = (e_G, e_H).$$

●

Lemma 35.1.4.
If G is a group and $g, h \in G$. The equations $g * x = h$ and $y * g = h$ have unique solutions in G.

Proof.
We can very quickly see

$$x = g^{-1} * h \quad \text{and} \quad y = h * g^{-1}.$$

■

Definition 35.1.2.
For a group G, we define the **order** of an element $g \in G$ to be the smallest positive integer n for which $g^n = e$. We will denote this by $|g| = n$. If no such integer exists, we say that g has infinite order.

Exercise 35.1.2.
If $x^2 = e$ for every $x \in G$, then G is abelian.

Solution.
If G has one or two elements, the result is trivial. So we will assume G has at least three elements. Pick any non-identity elements $x, y \in G$.

$$\begin{aligned}
(x * y) * (x * y) &= e \\
(x * y) * (x * y) * y &= e * y \\
(x * y) * x * (y * y) &= y \\
(x * y) * x * (e) &= y \\
(x * y) * x &= y \\
[(x * y) * x] * x &= y * x \\
(x * y) * (x *) &= y * x \\
x * y &= y * x
\end{aligned}$$

The last equation is what was required to prove. ●

§35.2 Symmetric Groups

Theorem 35.2.1.
Let Ω be any non-empty set. Then the set

$$S_\Omega = \{f : \Omega \to \Omega : f \text{ is a bijection.}\}$$

is a group under the operation of function composition.

Proof.
The composition of bijective functions is a bijective function and composition is associative. We take the identity element of S_Ω to be Id_Ω. For the inverse of $f \in S_\Omega$, we take f^{-1}. ■

The above group is called the **symmetric group** on Ω. For the rest of this section, we will take the special case that $\Omega = \{1, 2, \ldots n\}$. This symmetric group is called the **symmetric group of degree** n and is denoted by S_n.

Theorem 35.2.2.
$|S_n| = n!$

Proof.
Let $\sigma \in S_n$. Then there are n choices for $\sigma(1)$, $n - 1$ choices for $\sigma(2)$ and in general there are $n + 1 - j$ choices for $\sigma(j)$. Multiplying all these choices together, we get

$$|S_n| = \prod_{j=1}^{n} (n + 1 - j) = n!$$

■

Example 35.2.1.
We will use this example to motive the need for cycle notation as well as how to write a permutation in cycle notation. Let $n = 13$ and $\sigma \in S_{13}$ be given by

$$\begin{array}{lllll}
\sigma(1) = 12, & \sigma(2) = 13, & \sigma(3) = 3, & \sigma(4) = 1, & \sigma(5) = 11, \\
\sigma(6) = 9, & \sigma(7) = 5, & \sigma(8) = 10, & \sigma(9) = 6, & \sigma(10) = 4, \\
\sigma(11) = 7, & \sigma(12) = 8, & \sigma(13) = 2 & &
\end{array}$$

This is quite cumbersome to write and it is difficult to deduce information quickly from reading this. That is why we use cycle notation.

To convert a permutation into a cycle, we begin with the smallest element not yet in a cycle and then we follow where the permutation sends this element and repeat until we end up back to where we started. For this example, we have

$$1 \to 12 \to 8 \to 10 \to 4 \to 1.$$

So this cycle is written as

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 12 & 8 & 10 & 4 \end{pmatrix}.$$

We repeat this process with the next smallest element that is not in a previous cycle until all elements are accounted for. Then we write all cycles next to each other. In this example, we have

$$\sigma = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 12 & 8 & 10 & 4 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 13 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 3 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 11 & 7 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 6 & 9 \end{pmatrix}.$$

As a final step, we will omit mention of fixed points since they can be understood by their absence. So finally, we have

$$\sigma = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 12 & 8 & 10 & 4 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 13 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 11 & 7 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 6 & 9 \end{pmatrix}.$$

By construction, it is easy to find the inverse of permutation in cycle notation. We see that

$$\sigma^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 10 & 8 & 12 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 13 & 2 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 7 & 11 & 5 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 9 & 6 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Example 35.2.2.
Let $\sigma, \tau \in S_3$ be given by

$$\sigma = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \tau = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

We can compose by simply following the elements under consecutive permutations. For example, if we we wish to find $\tau \circ \sigma$, we start with 1 and see that it gets sent to 2 by σ. And we see the that τ fixes 2. So $\tau \circ \sigma$ sends 1 to 2. Now σ sends 2 to 1 and τ sends 1 to 3. So $\tau \circ \sigma$ sends 2 to 3. So we have

$$\tau \circ \sigma = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

We can do the same for $\sigma \circ \tau$ and get

$$\sigma \circ \tau = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

In this example, we have shown that S_3 is not abelian.

Theorem 35.2.3.
For all $n \geq 3$, S_n is non-abelian.

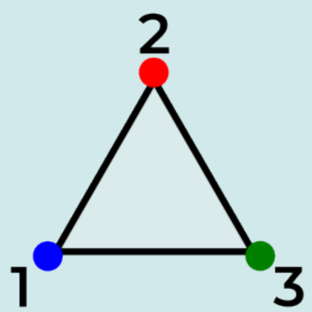
Proof.
Take the element σ that exchanges 1 and 2 and leaves everything else fixed and the element τ that exchanges the elements 1 and 3 and leaves everything else fixed. By the above example, we know that

$$\tau \circ \sigma \neq \sigma \circ \tau.$$

■

§35.3 Dihedral Group

Example 35.3.1.
Consider an equilateral triangle with vertices colored **blue**, **red**, and **green**, positioned at labels 1, 2, and 3, respectively.

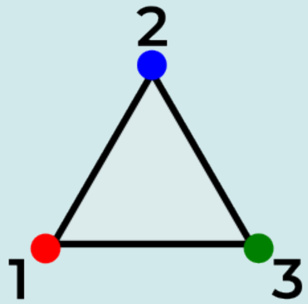


Using the previously established cycle notation, we impose a group structure on the symmetries of the triangle. The cycle $(a\ \ b\ \ c)$ means that the vertex at position a moves to position b, the vertex at position b moves to position c, and the vertex at position c moves to position a.

For example, applying the cycle $(1\ \ 2)$ to the triangle:

- the **blue vertex** at position 1 moves to position 2,
- the **red vertex** at position 2 moves to position 1,
- the **green vertex** at position 3 remains fixed (as it is omitted from the cycle).

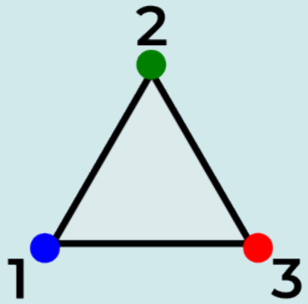
The resulting triangle appears as follows:



This visual framework aligns naturally with the group operation in the symmetric group. Suppose that after applying $(1\ \ 2)$, we then apply the cycle $(1\ \ 3\ \ 2)$. Then:

- the **red vertex**, now at position 1, moves to position 3,
- the **green vertex** at position 3 moves to position 2,
- the **blue vertex** at position 2 moves back to position 1.

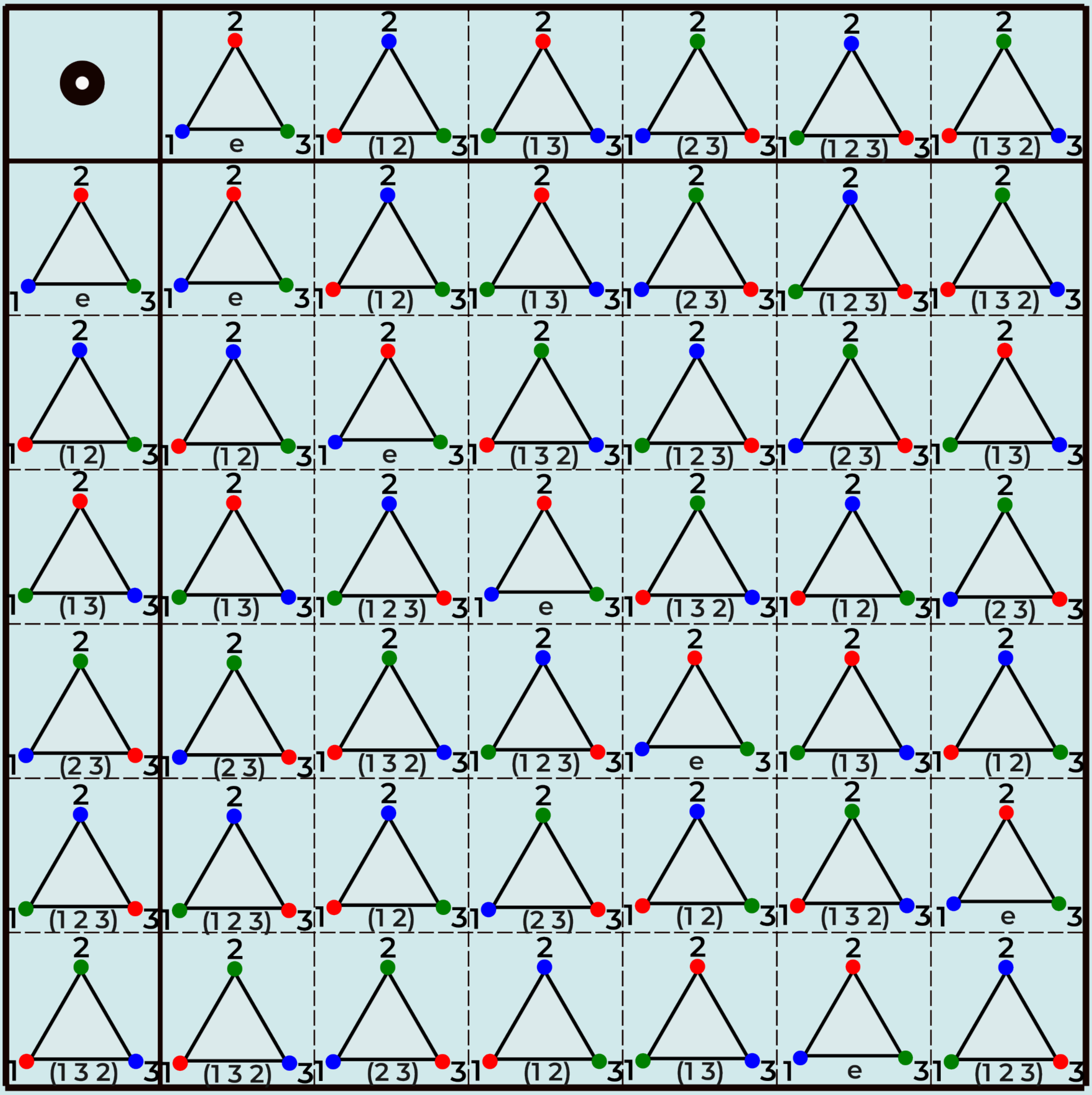
The final configuration is:



Note that this is the same result as applying the cycle $(2\ \ 3)$ to the original triangle. Indeed,

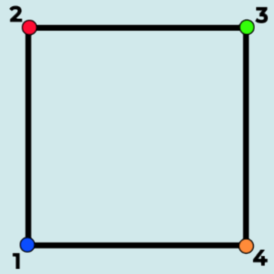
$$(1\ \ 3\ \ 2)(1\ \ 2) = (2\ \ 3)\,.$$

We can continue this with every possible symmetry of the equilateral triangle to get the following multiplication table:



Before we explore the dihedral group in general, let us work through another example: the symmetries of the square.

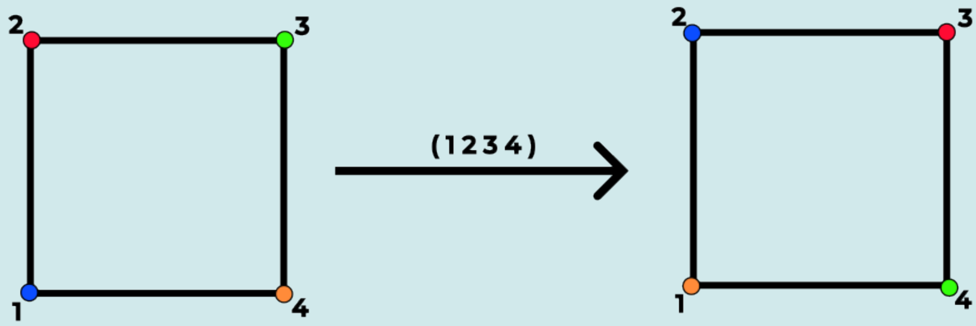
Example 35.3.2.
Consider a square with vertices colored **blue**, **red**, **green**, and **orange** and positioned at labels 1, 2, 3, 4 respectively.



As we will show in generality later, we can generate every element of the dihedral group using a rotation and a flip. It does not matter which flip we choose, so let us pick the *vertical flip* (swapping the left and right vertices), represented by the permutation $(1\ 4)(2\ 3)$. For our rotation, we will use the 90° clockwise rotation (sending each vertex to the next one in clockwise order), represented by $(1\ 2\ 3\ 4)$.

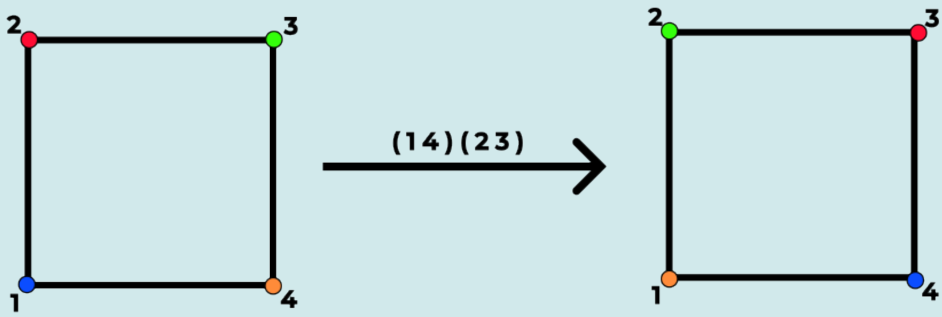
Applying $(1\ 2\ 3\ 4)$ to our square has the following effect:

- the **blue** vertex at position 1 moves to position 2,
- the **red** vertex at position 2 moves to position 3,
- the **green** vertex at position 3 moves to position 4, and
- the **orange** vertex at position 4 moves to position 1.

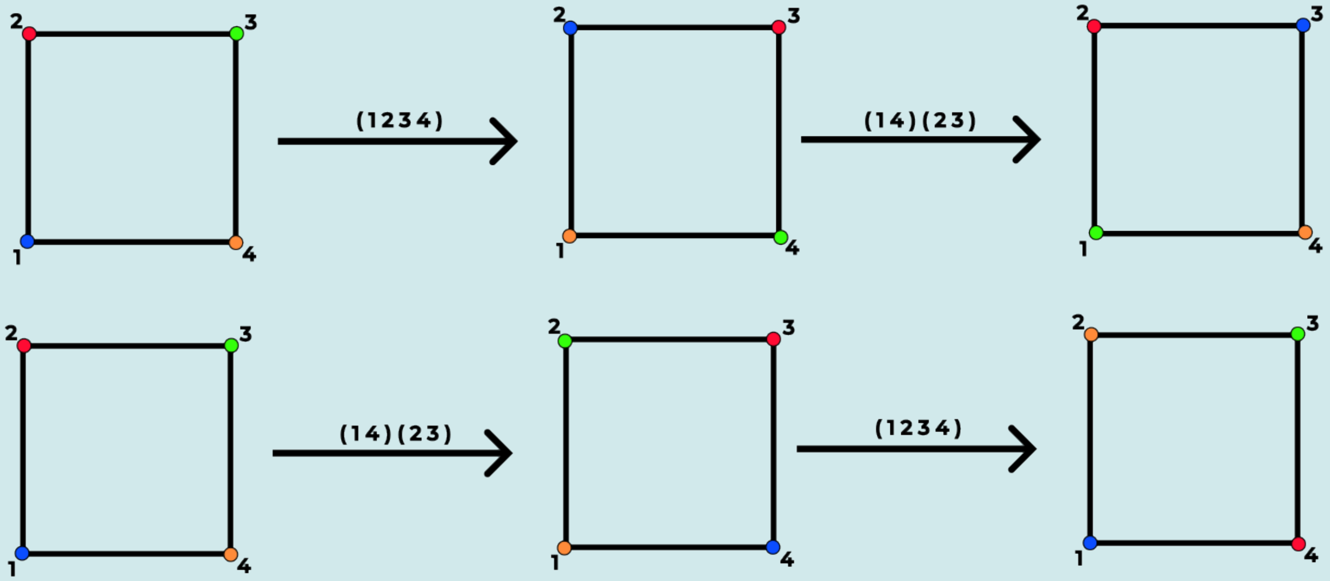


Similarly, applying $(1\ 4)(2\ 3)$ (the vertical flip) gives:

- the **blue** vertex at position 1 moves to position 4,
- the **red** vertex at position 2 moves to position 3,
- the **green** vertex at position 3 moves to position 2, and
- the **orange** vertex at position 4 moves to position 1.

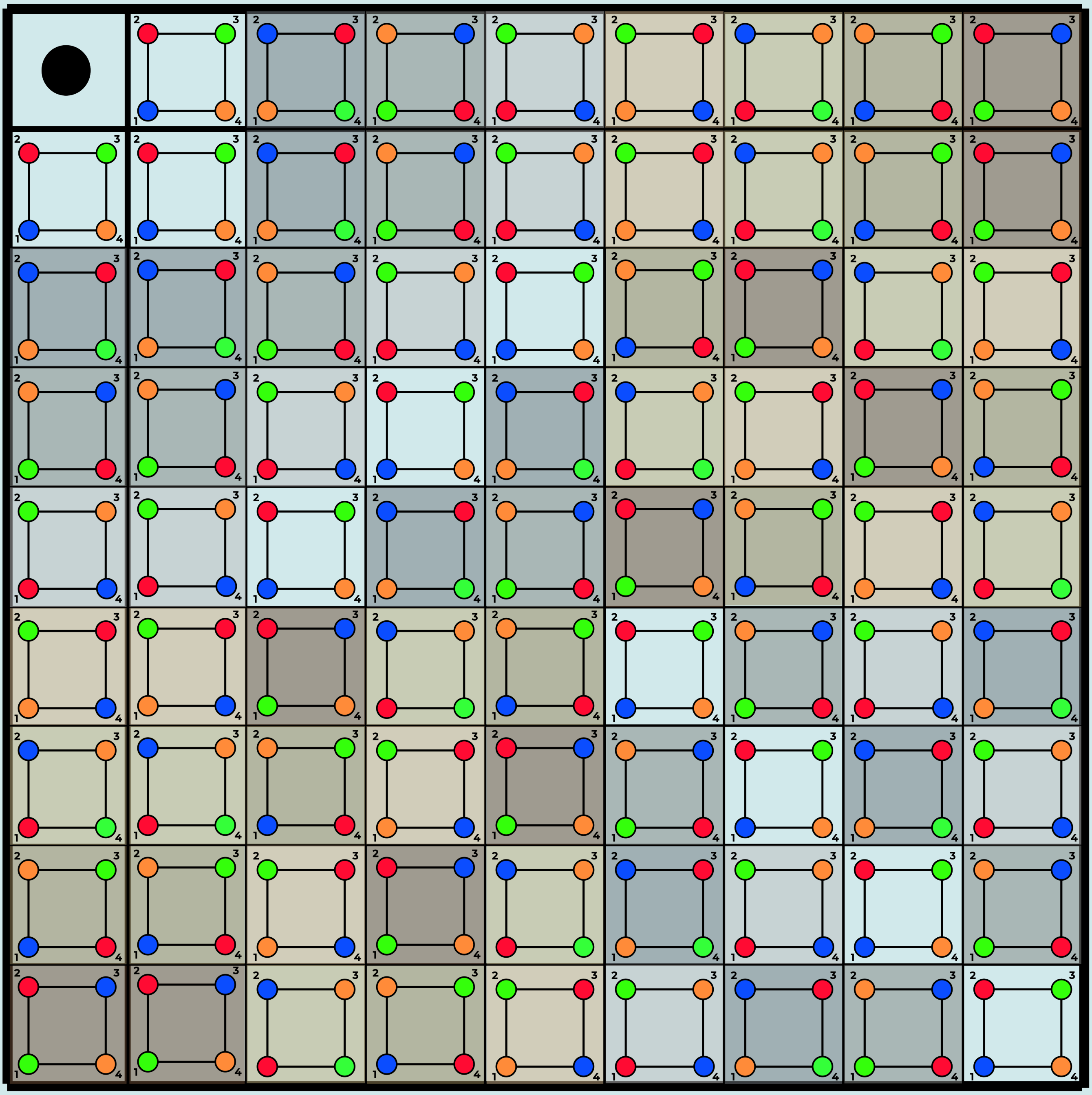


Much like the previous example, we can compose symmetries. If we apply a rotation and then a flip, we have $(1\ 4)(2\ 3) \cdot (1\ 2\ 3\ 4) = (1\ 3)$, a reflection across the diagonal from vertex 1 to vertex 3.
If we first apply a flip followed by a rotation, we have $(1\ 2\ 3\ 4) \cdot (1\ 4)(2\ 3) = (2\ 4)$, a reflection across the diagonal from vertex 2 to vertex 4.



By combining the rotation and the flip in different orders, we can generate all eight symmetries of the square. The complete multiplication table is shown on the next page:

- The identity element has a white background.
- The rotation elements have grey backgrounds with $(1\ 2\ 3\ 4)$ having **this color background**, $(1\ 3)(2\ 4)$ having **this color background**, and $(1\ 4\ 3\ 2)$ having **this color background**.
- The reflection elements have brown backgrounds with $(1\ 4)(2\ 3)$ having **this color background**, $(1\ 2)(3\ 4)$ having **this color background**, $(2\ 4)$ having **this color background**, and $(1\ 3)$ having **this color background**.



§35.4 Matrix groups

36 Group Actions

> Groups, as men, will be known by their actions.
>
> *Guillermo Moreno*

§36.1 Definitions, Basic Results, and Examples

Definition 36.1.1.
We say that a group G **acts** on a set A if there is a map

$$\cdot\colon G \times A \to A, \quad (g, a) \mapsto g \cdot a$$

such that for all $g_1, g_2 \in G$ and $a \in A$:

i) $g_1 \cdot (g_2 \cdot a) = (g_1 g_2) \cdot a$, where $g_1 g_2$ denotes the product in G.

ii) $e_G \cdot a = a$, where e_G is the identity of G.

We call this a **group action** of G on A. We will denote this as $G \curvearrowright A$.

Instead of viewing the group action as a map from $G \times A$ to A, we could actually adopt the view that a group action is a map from G to S_A, where S_A is the collection of bijections on A. Moreover, this map is a homomorphism! This requires proof.

Theorem 36.1.1.
Let G be a group acting on a set A via a map

$$\cdot\colon G \times A \to A.$$

Then there is an associated map

$$\varphi\colon G \to S_A, \quad g \mapsto \varphi(g) \text{ such that } [\varphi(g)](a) = g \cdot a,$$

where S_A is the symmetric group on A (the set of all bijections $A \to A$). Moreover, φ is a group homomorphism.

Conversely, any group homomorphism $\varphi\colon G \to S_A$ defines a group action of G on A via

$$g \cdot a := [\varphi(g)](a).$$

Proof.
First, we will verify that for each $g \in G$, the map $\varphi(g)\colon A \to A$ is a bijection. To do this, it suffices to show that $\varphi(g)$ has a two-sided inverse. The natural candidate is

$$[\varphi(g)]^{-1} := \varphi(g^{-1}).$$

For any $a \in A$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
(\varphi(g^{-1}) \circ \varphi(g))(a) &= \varphi(g^{-1})(\varphi(g)(a)) \\
&= \varphi(g^{-1})(g \cdot a) && \text{(by definition of } \varphi) \\
&= g^{-1} \cdot (g \cdot a) && \text{(by definition of the group action)} \\
&= (g^{-1} g) \cdot a \\
&= e \cdot a \\
&= a && \text{(identity property of the action).}
\end{aligned}$$

Similarly, $\varphi(g) \circ \varphi(g^{-1}) = \mathrm{id}_A$, so $\varphi(g)$ is bijective.

Now to show that φ is a homomorphism, pick any $g, h \in G$ and $a \in A$, then

$$\begin{aligned}[\varphi(gh)](a) &= (gh) \cdot a \\ &= g \cdot (h \cdot a) \\ &= g \cdot (\varphi(h)(a)) \\ &= \varphi(g)(\varphi(h)(a)) \\ &= [\varphi(g) \circ \varphi(h)](a)\end{aligned}$$

which shows that $\varphi(gh) = \varphi(g) \circ \varphi(h)$.
Finally, to show that any group homomorphism $\varphi : G \to S_A$ defines a G-action on A by $g \cdot a = [\varphi(g)](a)$, we just need to verify the axioms of a group action. For any $g_1, g_2 \in G$ and $a \in A$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}(g_1 g_2) \cdot a &= [\varphi(g_1 g_2)](a) \\ &= [\varphi(g_1) \circ \varphi(g_2)](a) && \text{(Since } \varphi \text{ is a homomorphism.)} \\ &= \varphi(g_1)(g_2 \cdot a) \\ &= g_1 \cdot (g_2 \cdot a)\end{aligned}$$

For the identity property,

$$\begin{aligned}e \cdot a &= [\varphi(e)](a) \\ &= \mathrm{Id}_A(a) && \text{(Since } \varphi \text{ is a homomorphism.)} \\ &= a\end{aligned}$$

which completes the proof. ∎

The above result highlights why group theory is such a powerful tool. Any group action corresponds to a subgroup of the group of all bijections on A. This means that groups provide a powerful angle of attack for tackling and understanding symmetries of any set. When we restrict our attention to bijections preserving additional structure, such as homeomorphisms in topology, biholomorphisms in complex analysis, or linear transformations in linear algebra (this is the focus of representation theory), the same framework applies, giving us a systematic way to understand and manipulate these transformations through their group properties.

Definition 36.1.2.
If the homomorphism, $\varphi : G \to S_A$ is injective, we say that the associated group action of G on A **acts faithfully**.

Lemma 36.1.2.
We define the **kernel** of a G action on A to be

$$\mathrm{Ker}(G \curvearrowright A) = \{g \in G \mid g \cdot a = a \text{ for all } a \in A\}$$

Then $\mathrm{Ker}(G \curvearrowright A) \trianglelefteq G$.

Proof.
This fact is readily apparent from the result that if $\varphi : G \to S_A$ is a homomorphism, then $\mathrm{Ker}(\varphi)$ is a normal subgroup of G. However, we will prove this result using the group action perspective for practice.
First we will show that $\mathrm{Ker}(G \curvearrowright A)$ is a subgroup. Since $G \curvearrowright A$, $e \in \mathrm{Ker}(G \curvearrowright A)$. Pick any $g, h \in \mathrm{Ker}(G \curvearrowright A)$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}a &= g \cdot a && \text{(Since } g \in \mathrm{Ker}(G \curvearrowright A)\text{)} \\ &= g \cdot (e \cdot a) \\ &= g \cdot \left(\left(h^{-1} h\right) \cdot a\right) \\ &= g \cdot \left(h^{-1} \cdot (h \cdot a)\right) \\ &= g \cdot \left(h^{-1} \cdot a\right) && \text{(Since } h \in \mathrm{Ker}(G \curvearrowright A)\text{)} \\ &= \left(gh^{-1}\right) \cdot a\end{aligned}$$

This shows that $gh^{-1} \in \mathrm{Ker}(G \curvearrowright A)$. By the subgroup test, $\mathrm{Ker}(G \curvearrowright A) \leq G$.

Now to show that $\operatorname{Ker}(G \curvearrowright A) \trianglelefteq G$, pick any $g \in \operatorname{Ker}(G \curvearrowright A)$, $h \in G$, and $a \in A$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
\left(hgh^{-1}\right) \cdot a &= (hg) \cdot \left(h^{-1} \cdot a\right) \\
&= h \cdot \left(g \cdot \left(h^{-1} \cdot a\right)\right) \\
&= h \cdot \left(h^{-1} \cdot a\right) && (\text{Since } g \in \operatorname{Ker}(G \curvearrowright A)) \\
&= \left(hh^{-1}\right) \cdot a \\
&= e \cdot a \\
&= a
\end{aligned}$$

This shows that $\operatorname{Ker}(G \curvearrowright A)$ is a normal subgroup of G. ■

Exercise 36.1.1.
Show that the kernel of a G action on A contains only the identity if and only if G acts faithfully on A.

Solution.
Let $\varphi : G \to S_A$ be the homomorphism associated to the action.

($\Rightarrow$) Suppose $\ker \varphi \neq \{e\}$. Then there exists $g \in G$, $g \neq e$, such that $\varphi(g) = \mathrm{id}_A$. In particular, for all $a \in A$ we have $g \cdot a = a$, so g and e induce the same permutation of A. Hence φ is not injective, and the action is not faithful.

($\Leftarrow$) Conversely, if the action is not faithful, then φ is not injective. Thus there exist distinct $g, h \in G$ such that $\varphi(g) = \varphi(h)$. Then

$$\varphi(gh^{-1}) = \varphi(g)\varphi(h)^{-1} = \varphi(h)\varphi(h)^{-1} = \mathrm{id}_A,$$

so $gh^{-1} \in \ker \varphi$ and $gh^{-1} \neq e$. Therefore the kernel is nontrivial. ●

§36.2 Automorphisms

Definition 36.2.1.
Let G be a group. An **automorphism** of G is an isomorphism from G to itself. We denote

$$\operatorname{Aut}(G) = \{\varphi : G \to G \mid \varphi \text{ is an automorphism.}\}$$

Lemma 36.2.1.
$\operatorname{Aut}(G)$ is a group under function composition.

Proof.
We verify the group axioms.

Closure: Suppose $\varphi, \psi \in \operatorname{Aut}(G)$ and pick $g, h \in G$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
(\varphi \circ \psi)\left(g \underset{G}{*} h\right) &= \varphi\left(\psi\left(g \underset{G}{*} h\right)\right) \\
&= \varphi\left(\psi(g) \underset{G}{*} \psi(h)\right) \\
&= \varphi(\psi(g)) \underset{G}{*} \varphi(\psi(h)) \\
&= (\varphi \circ \psi)(g) \underset{G}{*} (\varphi \circ \psi)(h)
\end{aligned}$$

So $\varphi \circ \psi$ is a homomorphism. Since the composition of bijections is a bijection, $\varphi \circ \psi$ is an automorphism. Thus $\operatorname{Aut}(G)$ is closed under function composition.

Identity: The identity map $\mathrm{id}_G : G \to G$ given by $\mathrm{id}_G(g) = g$ is clearly a bijective homomorphism, hence $\mathrm{id}_G \in \operatorname{Aut}(G)$.

Inverses: Let $\varphi \in \operatorname{Aut}(G)$. Since φ is a bijection, $\varphi^{-1} : G \to G$ exists. We need to show φ^{-1} is a homomorphism. Let $g, h \in G$.

Then there exist $g', h' \in G$ such that $\varphi(g') = g$ and $\varphi(h') = h$. Thus

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi^{-1}(g \underset{G}{*} h) &= \varphi^{-1}(\varphi(g') \underset{G}{*} \varphi(h')) \\ &= \varphi^{-1}(\varphi(g' \underset{G}{*} h')) \\ &= g' \underset{G}{*} h' \\ &= \varphi^{-1}(g) \underset{G}{*} \varphi^{-1}(h)\end{aligned}$$

So $\varphi^{-1} \in \mathrm{Aut}(G)$.

Associativity: Function composition is associative.

Therefore $\mathrm{Aut}(G)$ is a group under function composition. ∎

37 Direct and Semidirect Products

§37.1 Semidirect Products

Theorem 37.1.1.
Let H and K be groups and $\varphi : K \to \mathrm{Aut}(H)$ be a homomorphism. Let $\cdot$ be the left K-action on H as determined by φ. Let $G = H \times K$ and define a multiplication on G by

$$(h_1, k_1) \underset{G}{*} (h_2, k_2) = \left(h_1 \underset{H}{*} (k_1 \cdot h_2), k_1 \underset{K}{*} k_2\right)$$

Then

i) The is multiplication makes G into a group called the **semidirect product** of H and K with respect to φ and we write $G = H \rtimes_\varphi K$ or $H \rtimes K$ if φ is unambiguous.

Proof.

■

Ring Theory

38 Introduction to Rings 159
38.1 Ideals 159

38 Introduction to Rings

Definition 38.0.1.
A **ring** R is a non-empty set equipped with two binary operations $+$ and $\times$, called addition and multiplication, respectively, such that:

i) R is an abelian group under addition.

ii) Multiplication $\times$ is associative.

iii) The left and right distributive laws hold: for all $r, s, t \in R$,

$$r \times (s + t) = (r \times s) + (r \times t) \quad \text{and} \quad (r + s) \times t = (r \times t) + (s \times t).$$

The ring R is **commutative** if multiplication is commutative. It is **unitary** if there exists an identity element $1_R \in R$ such that $1_R \times r = r \times 1_R = r$ for all $r \in R$. Multiplication may be written as

$$r \times s, \quad r \cdot s, \quad \text{or simply } rs,$$

with juxtaposition rs usually being the default.

Theorem 38.0.1.
Every finite integral domain is a field.

Proof.
We need only show that every non-zero element of R has a multiplicative inverse.
Suppose that R is a finite integral domain. Pick $a \in R$ non-zero and define

$$\varphi_a(x) := ax.$$

Suppose that $\varphi_a(x) = \varphi_a(y)$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_a(x) &= \varphi_a(y) \\ ax &= ay \\ ax - ay &= 0 \\ a(x - y) &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Since R is an integral domain, either a or $x - y$ must be 0. Since a was chosen to be non-zero, $x - y$ must be 0 or $x = y$. Since $\varphi_a(x) = \varphi_a(y) \implies x = y$, φ_a is injective. Since R is finite, φ_a is also surjective and hence has a unique two sided inverse, call it φ_b. Therefore

$$\varphi_b(\varphi_a(1)) = \varphi_a(\varphi_b(1)) = 1 \implies ba = ab = 1$$

So a has a multiplicative inverse and we are done. ■

§38.1 Ideals

Much like in group theory, we want to develop some quotient structure on rings. Since a ring is a group under addition, that can be taken care of with existing tools. So let us contend with multiplication.

Given a subset I of a ring R. What conditions do we need for the quotient $R/_I$ to be a ring? Let $r + I$ and $s + I$ be left additive cosets. We want

$$(r + I)(s + I) = rs + I.$$

Let us "expand" the left side.

$$(r + I)(s + I) = rs + rI + Is + I \cdot I$$

If we impose the conditions, that

i) I is a subring of R,

ii) For all $r \in R$, $rI \subseteq I$,

we quickly see that sets $(r + I)(s + I)$ and $rs + I$ are equal. This is the motivation for the definition of an **ideal**.

Definition 38.1.1.
Let $I \subseteq R$ be a subset of a ring R. We say I is a **left ideal** of R if I is an additive subgroup of R closed under multiplication, and for all $r \in R$ and $x \in I$, we have $rx \in I$.
Similarly, I is a **right ideal** of R if I is an additive subgroup of R closed under multiplication, and for all $r \in R$ and $x \in I$, we have $xr \in I$.
A **two-sided ideal** of R is a subset that is both a left ideal and a right ideal.
When the sidedness is clear from context or irrelevant, we will simply use the term **ideal**.

Point-Set Topology

39 Topological Spaces and Continuous Functions 164
39.1 Definition, Open Sets 164
39.2 Closed Sets 166
39.3 Basis for a Topology 168

40 Connectedness and Compactness 170
40.1 Connectedness 170

Why Topology?

It's 6th period geometry. Your teacher, yet un-assaulted by chalk dust (but give it time), is talking about when we know two triangles are congruent. SSS, SAS, ASA... wait what? Doesn't she mean equal? Why are we just making up new words for equality? Is Big Math™ just making stuff up for the sake of confusion?

You're picking up on a subtle point. Two triangles might *seem* equal if they have the exact same side lengths and angles but they aren't for what seems to be a very nit-picky but important reason, they don't occupy the same points in space. However, we have an easy fix. We can find a map called an **isometry** that maps the set of points that make one triangle onto the set of points that make up the other. Under this rephrasing, the SSS, SAS, ASA conditions are sufficient conditions that allow us to declare the existence of an isometry that maps one triangle onto another without having to explicitly find one.

The idea of finding a "useful" class of maps and conditions that guarantee their existence cannot possibly be more prevalent than it is in topology. However, isometries, while useful, are too rigid, they preserve too much structure. That is why, in topology, we begin with the most general class of functions that preserve spatial (topological) information called **homeomorphisms**. We will discuss conditions that guarantee their existence and spatial information that they preserve.

While we will (usually) just stick to homeomorphisms in this part, it is important to mention that homeomorphisms are *too* general. A complete classification of spaces up to homeomorphism will elude us as long as Sisyphus remains at his task. So, in practice, we impose additional structure on topological spaces and restrict to maps that preserve this structure, allowing us to detect much finer invariants.

While homeomorphisms are the maps, the primary actors for which homeomorphisms act on are **topological spaces**, which are supposed to capture the notion of closeness. It has taken mathematicians many years to pick out the right abstractions of closeness. A primitive approach might be "two points are close if the distance between them is small." But that just kicks the can down the road. "The distance between two points is small if they are close together." The stroke of genius here is that closeness is a contextual property. If I give you one point, you cannot tell me anything about closeness or farness. This is the first hint that sets are the natural tool to talk about closeness. But what *types* of sets? If I just hand you the full collection of points, there just isn't enough information to construct a notion of closeness. We need to pick the *right* sets.

Let's see how sets can encode closeness through a game. Suppose that we play a game of darts but the bar hasn't ordered the dartboard. Like the hooligans we are, we proceed anyways. We mark a bulls-eye on the blank wall and each throw our dart a single round before the bar owner gets mad at us. Before we are kicked out of the bar, we must determine a winner. The bar owner obliges us and hands us a bunch of empty cardboard in which we can cut out circles. We make a big circle with the first cardboard and place the center on our imagined bullseye. It covers the two holes in the wall we made so we conclude that our darts landed in the interior of our circle. We make a second circle but this time it is far too small. Both holes we made lie in the exterior of our circle. The third circle is our Goldilocks circle, we see that the hole you made lies in the interior and the hole I made lies in the exterior. You win again (how do you keep winning?). Notice that we arrived at a notion of closeness *without measuring or even assigning a number to anything*. Each circle defines an **open set**: the collection of all points that would fall strictly inside it. By declaring which sets are "open," we encode the information about closeness we need.

39 Topological Spaces and Continuous Functions

§39.1 Definition, Open Sets

Definition 39.1.1.
Let X be any set. A **topology** on X is a collection $\mathcal{T} \subseteq \mathcal{P}(X)$ such that the following criteria hold:

i) $\varnothing, X \in \mathcal{T}$.

ii) For any collection of sets $\{U_\alpha\}_{\alpha \in \mathcal{A}} \subseteq \mathcal{T}$, we have

$$\bigcup_{\alpha \in \mathcal{A}} U_\alpha \in \mathcal{T}.$$

iii) For any finite collection of sets $\{U_j\}_{j=1}^n \subseteq \mathcal{T}$, we have

$$\bigcap_{j=1}^n U_j \in \mathcal{T}.$$

If a set $U \subseteq X$ belongs to $\mathcal{T}$, we call U an **open** set. If $x \in U$ and U is open, we sometimes refer to U as an **open neighborhood** of x.

The topology on the empty set is not interesting, so from now on we will assume that X is non-empty.

Definition 39.1.2.
Let X be a set and let $\mathcal{T}$ and $\mathcal{T}'$ be two topologies on X. If $\mathcal{T} \subseteq \mathcal{T}'$, we say that $\mathcal{T}'$ is **finer** than $\mathcal{T}$, or equivalently that $\mathcal{T}$ is **coarser** than $\mathcal{T}'$. If $\mathcal{T} \subset \mathcal{T}'$, we say that $\mathcal{T}'$ is **strictly finer** than $\mathcal{T}$, or that $\mathcal{T}$ is **strictly coarser** than $\mathcal{T}'$. We call the topologies $\mathcal{T}$ and $\mathcal{T}'$ **comparable** if one is finer than the other.

Example 39.1.1.
For any set X, there are two obvious topologies. The **indiscrete** topology which is just

$$\mathcal{T}_{\text{indiscrete}} = \{\varnothing, X\}$$

and the **discrete** topology which is just

$$\mathcal{T}_{\text{discrete}} = \mathcal{P}(X).$$

Exercise 39.1.1.
Let $X = \{a, b, c\}$. What are all the possible topologies on X?

Solution.
We have the discrete and indiscrete topologies on X.

$$\mathcal{T}_{\text{discrete}} = \{\varnothing, \{a\}, \{b\}, \{c\}, \{a, b\}, \{a, c\}, \{b, c\}, \{a, b, c\}\}$$

$$\mathcal{T}_{\text{indiscrete}} = \{\varnothing, \{a, b, c\}\}$$

Then we have the topologies that augment the indiscrete topology with a singleton set

$$\mathcal{T}_1 = \{\varnothing, \{a\}, \{a, b, c\}\}, \ \mathcal{T}_2 = \{\varnothing, \{b\}, \{a, b, c\}\}, \ \mathcal{T}_3 = \{\varnothing, \{c\}, \{a, b, c\}\}$$

We can fill out the rest

$$\mathcal{T}_4 = \{\varnothing, \{a\}, \{a, b\}, \{a, b, c\}\}, \ \mathcal{T}_5 = \{\varnothing, \{a\}, \{a, c\}, \{a, b, c\}\}, \ \mathcal{T}_6 = \{\varnothing, \{a\}, \{b, c\}, \{a, b, c\}\}$$

$$\mathcal{T}_7 = \{\varnothing, \{b\}, \{a, b\}, \{a, b, c\}\}, \ \mathcal{T}_8 = \{\varnothing, \{b\}, \{a, c\}, \{a, b, c\}\}, \ \mathcal{T}_9 = \{\varnothing, \{b\}, \{b, c\}, \{a, b, c\}\}$$

$$\mathcal{T}_{10} = \{\varnothing, \{c\}, \{a, b\}, \{a, b, c\}\}, \ \mathcal{T}_{11} = \{\varnothing, \{c\}, \{a, c\}, \{a, b, c\}\}, \ \mathcal{T}_{12} = \{\varnothing, \{c\}, \{b, c\}, \{a, b, c\}\}$$

$$\mathcal{T}_{13} = \{\varnothing, \{a\}, \{b\}, \{a,b\}, \{a,b,c\}\}, \ \mathcal{T}_{14} = \{\varnothing, \{a\}, \{c\}, \{a,c\}, \{a,b,c\}\}, \ \mathcal{T}_{15} = \{\varnothing, \{b\}, \{c\}, \{b,c\}, \{a,b,c\}\}$$
$$\mathcal{T}_{16} = \{\varnothing, \{a\}, \{a,b\}, \{a,c\}, \{a,b,c\}\}, \ \mathcal{T}_{17} = \{\varnothing, \{b\}, \{a,b\}, \{b,c\}, \{a,b,c\}\}, \ \mathcal{T}_{18} = \{\varnothing, \{c\}, \{a,c\}, \{b,c\}, \{a,b,c\}\}$$

$$\mathcal{T}_{19} = \{\varnothing, \{a\}, \{b\}, \{a,b\}, \{a,c\}, \{a,b,c\}\}, \ \mathcal{T}_{20} = \{\varnothing, \{a\}, \{c\}, \{a,b\}, \{a,c\}, \{a,b,c\}\}$$
$$\mathcal{T}_{21} = \{\varnothing, \{a\}, \{b\}, \{a,b\}, \{b,c\}, \{a,b,c\}\}, \ \mathcal{T}_{22} = \{\varnothing, \{a\}, \{c\}, \{a,c\}, \{b,c\}, \{a,b,c\}\}$$
$$\mathcal{T}_{23} = \{\varnothing, \{b\}, \{c\}, \{b,c\}, \{a,b\}, \{a,b,c\}\}, \mathcal{T}_{24} = \{\varnothing, \{b\}, \{c\}, \{b,c\}, \{a,c\}, \{a,b,c\}\}$$

$$\mathcal{T}_{25} = \{\varnothing, \{a,b\}, \{a,b,c\}\}, \ T_{26} = \{\varnothing, \{a,c\}, \{a,b,c\}\}, \ \mathcal{T}_{27} = \{\varnothing, \{b,c\}, \{a,b,c\}\}$$

●

Exercise 39.1.2.
Let X be a set and we define the co-finite topology $\mathcal{T}_{\text{cf}}$ as follows: U is open in $\mathcal{T}_{\text{cf}}$ if and only if $X - U$ is finite or all of X. Show that this is indeed a topology.

Solution.
Clearly $\varnothing$ and X each belong to $\mathcal{T}_{\text{cf}}$, so we will jump right into verifying closure under arbitrary unions and finite intersections. Let $U_{\alpha \in A} \in \mathcal{T}_{\text{cf}}$. We want to show that

$$\bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha \in \mathcal{T}_{\text{cf}}$$

or that

$$X - \left(\bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha \right)$$

is finite. We can apply one of DeMorgan's laws to the above expression to get

$$X - \left(\bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha \right) = \bigcap_{\alpha \in A} (X - U_\alpha)$$

Since each U_α belongs to $\mathcal{T}_{\text{cf}}$, each $X - U_\alpha$ is finite. Therefore $\bigcap_{\alpha \in A} (X - U_\alpha)$ is certainly finite. This establishes that $\bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha \in \mathcal{T}_{\text{cf}}$.
Now for finite intersections, suppose that $\{U_1, \dots U_n\} \subseteq \mathcal{T}_{\text{cf}}$. We want to show that

$$\bigcap_{j=1}^{n} U_n \in \mathcal{T}_{\text{cf}}$$

or

$$X - \left(\bigcap_{j=1}^{n} U_j \right)$$

is finite. Again, we apply one of DeMorgan's laws to get

$$X - \left(\bigcap_{j=1}^{n} U_j \right) = \bigcup_{j=1}^{n} (X - U_j).$$

Since each $U_j \in \mathcal{T}_{\text{cf}}$, each $X - U_j$ is finite. This implies that $\bigcup_{j=1}^{n} (X - U_j)$ is finite so $\bigcap_{j=1}^{n} U_j \in \mathcal{T}_{\text{cf}}$. This concludes the proof. ●

Definition 39.1.3.
Let X be a topological space. The **interior** of a set A of X, denoted by $\operatorname{Int}(A)$ is defined to be the set:

$$\operatorname{Int}(A) = \bigcup \{U \subseteq A \mid U \text{ is an open set.}\}$$

In other words, $\operatorname{Int}(A)$ is the union of all open sets contained in A.

A point x of A is called an **interior point** of A it is a member of $\text{Int}(A)$.

Definition 39.1.4.
Let X be a topological space. The **exterior** of a set A, denoted by $\text{Ext}(A)$ is defined to be

$$\text{Ext}(A) = \text{Int}(X - A).$$

Definition 39.1.5.
The X be a topological space. The **boundary** of a set A, denoted as $\partial(A)$, is the set

$$\partial(A) = X - (\text{Int}(A) \cup \text{Ext}(A)).$$

Lemma 39.1.1.
A set U of a topological space X is open if and only if $U = \text{Int}(U)$.

Proof.
$(\Rightarrow)$ Suppose that U is open. We want to show that $U = \text{Int}(U)$. $\text{Int}(U) \subseteq U$ is obvious by definition so we just need to show that $U \subseteq \text{Int}(U)$. Since $\text{Int}(U)$ is the union of all open subsets of U and U is open, it follows that $U \subseteq \text{Int}(U)$.
$(\Leftarrow)$ Suppose $\text{Int}(U) = U$. Since $\text{Int}(U)$ is the union of all open subsets of U, $\text{Int}(U)$ is open and hence, U is open. ■

Corollary.
The exterior of a set A in a topological space is an open set.

§39.2 Closed Sets

Definition 39.2.1.
Let X be a topological space. A set $C \subseteq X$ is said to be **closed** in X if $X - C$ is open in X.

Theorem 39.2.1.
The following are equivalent:

I) There is a set $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \mathcal{P}(X)$ such that:

- **i)** $\varnothing, X \in \mathcal{C}$
- **ii)** For any arbitrary collection $\{C_\alpha\}_{\alpha \in A} \subseteq \mathcal{C}$, $\bigcap\limits_{\alpha \in A} C_\alpha \in \mathcal{C}$
- **iii)** For any finite collection $\{C_k\}_{k=1}^{n}$, $\bigcup\limits_{k=1}^{n} C_k \in \mathcal{C}$

II) There is a topology on X whose collection of closed sets is precisely $\mathcal{C}$.

This is to say that we could have defined a topology on X in terms of closed sets.

Proof.
$(\Rightarrow)$ Assume the conditions of **(I)** and define

$$\mathcal{T} = \{U \in \mathcal{P}(X) \mid X - U \in \mathcal{C}\}$$

We want to show that $\mathcal{T}$ is indeed a topology.
$\varnothing \in \mathcal{T}$ since $X = X - \varnothing \in \mathcal{C}$ and similarly $X \in \mathcal{T}$ since $\varnothing = X - X \in \mathcal{C}$.

Pick some arbitrary subcollection $\{U_\alpha\}_{\alpha \in A}$ of $\mathcal{T}$. We want to show that $\bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha \in \mathcal{T}$ or, equivalently, $X - \left(\bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha\right) \in \mathcal{C}$

$$X - \left(\bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha\right) = \bigcap_{\alpha \in A} (X - U_\alpha)$$
$$\in \mathcal{C}$$

Similarly, if $\{U_k\}_{k=1}^n$ is a finite subcollection of $\mathcal{T}$, we want to show that $\bigcap_{k=1}^n U_k \in \mathcal{T}$ or, equivalently, $X - \left(\bigcap_{k=1}^n U_k\right) \in \mathcal{C}$

$$X - \left(\bigcap_{k=1}^n U_k\right) = \bigcup_{k=1}^n (X - U_k)$$
$$\in \mathcal{C}$$

So $\mathcal{T}$ is a topology defined on X whose collection of closed sets is, by construction, $\mathcal{C}$.
($\Leftarrow$) Assume X is equipped with a topology $\mathcal{T}$, and let

$$\mathcal{C} = \{ X - U \mid U \in \mathcal{T} \}$$

be the collection of closed sets. We check that $\mathcal{C}$ satisfies **(i)–(iii)**.
(i) Since X and $\varnothing$ are open, their complements

$$X - X = \varnothing, \qquad X - \varnothing = X$$

are closed, so $\varnothing, X \in \mathcal{C}$.
(ii) Let $\{C_\alpha\}_{\alpha \in A} \subseteq \mathcal{C}$. For each α, choose an open set U_α with $C_\alpha = X - U_\alpha$. Then

$$\bigcap_{\alpha \in A} C_\alpha = \bigcap_{\alpha \in A} (X - U_\alpha) = X - \bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha,$$

and since an arbitrary union of open sets is open, the right-hand side is in $\mathcal{C}$.
(iii) For a finite collection $C_1, \ldots, C_n \in \mathcal{C}$, write $C_k = X - U_k$ with each U_k open. Then

$$\bigcup_{k=1}^n C_k = \bigcup_{k=1}^n (X - U_k) = X - \bigcap_{k=1}^n U_k,$$

and because a finite intersection of open sets is open, this lies in $\mathcal{C}$ as well.
Thus $\mathcal{C}$ satisfies the three conditions, completing the proof. ∎

Definition 39.2.2.
A point x of a topological space X is said to be a **limit point** of a set $A \subseteq X$ if every deleted open neighborhood of x contains a point of A. That is to say; for every open set U that contains x:

$$(U - \{x\}) \cap A \neq \varnothing.$$

The collection of limit points of A is denoted by A'.

Theorem 39.2.2.
A subset C of a topological space X is closed if and only if it contains all its limit points. In other words,

$$C \text{ is closed} \iff C' \subseteq C.$$

Proof.
($\Rightarrow$) Suppose that C is closed. Pick some $x \notin C$. So $x \in X - C$. Since C is closed, $X - C$ is open. But that means we have found an open neighborhood, particularly $X - C$, of x that is disjoint from C. So x cannot be a limit point of C. Since the assumption $x \notin C$ leads to the conclusion that x is not a limit point of C, it follows that C must contain all its limit points.
($\Leftarrow$) Suppose that C contains all its limit points. Consider the set $X - C$. Since C contains all its limit points, for every element $x \in X - C$, we know that x is not a limit point of C. Therefore, there exists a neighborhood U of x for which $(U - \{x\}) \cap C = \varnothing$.

Since $x \in X - C$ (so $x \notin C$), this implies that $U \cap C = \varnothing$, and hence $U \subseteq X - C$. This shows that every point of $X - C$ is an interior point of $X - C$, or equivalently $X - C = \mathrm{Int}(X - C)$. By lemma 39.1.1, this implies $X - C$ is open and hence C is closed. ■

Definition 39.2.3.
The **closure** of a set A in a topological space X, denoted as $\overline{A}$, is the set

$$\overline{A} = \bigcap \{A \subseteq C \mid C \text{ is a closed set.}\}$$

§39.3 Basis for a Topology

Definition 39.3.1.
If X is a set, we define a **basis** $\mathcal{B}$ for a topology to be a collection of subsets of X that satisfies the following criteria:

i) For every $x \in X$, there is some $B \in \mathcal{B}$ such that $x \in B$.

ii) For every $B_1, B_2 \in \mathcal{B}$ and $x \in B_1 \cap B_2$ there is some $B_3 \in \mathcal{B}$ such that $x \in B_3$ and $B_3 \subseteq B_1 \cap B_2$.

A subset U of X belongs to the topology $\mathcal{T}$ generated by $\mathcal{B}$ if for each $x \in U$, there is some $B_x \in \mathcal{B}$ such that $x \in B_x$ and $B_x \subseteq U$.

Theorem 39.3.1.
The topology $\mathcal{T}$ generated by $\mathcal{B}$ is indeed a topology.

Proof.
$\varnothing \in \mathcal{T}$ vacuously and $X \in \mathcal{T}$ by definition. Now let $U_{\alpha \in A}$ be an arbitrary collection of open sets. We wish to show that

$$\bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha \in \mathcal{T}.$$

Pick any $x \in \bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha$. Then $x \in U_\beta$ for at least one $\beta \in A$. Since $U_\beta \in \mathcal{T}$, there is some $B \in \mathcal{B}$ for which $x \in B$ and $B \subseteq U_\beta$. So we can choose the same B to get

$$x \in B \subseteq \bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha.$$

Since this holds for all $x \in \bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha$, this shows that $\bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha \in \mathcal{T}$.

Now let $U_1, \ldots, U_n$ be a finite collection of open sets. We wish to show that

$$\bigcap_{j=1}^{n} U_j \in \mathcal{T}.$$

We will proceed by induction. The case $n = 1$ is trivial so our base case will be $n = 2$. Suppose U_1 and U_2 are open sets. We wish to show that $U_1 \cap U_2$ is open. In other words, for any $x \in U_1 \cap U_2$, we wish to find a basis element that contains x and is contained in $U_1 \cap U_2$. So pick any $x \in U_1 \cap U_2$. Then $x \in U_1$ and $x \in U_2$. Since U_1 and U_2 were already open, there exists $B_1, B_2 \in \mathcal{B}$ such that $x \in B_1 \subseteq U_1$ and $x \in B_2 \subseteq U_2$. Since $\mathcal{B}$ is a basis, there is another basis element B_3 containing x and contained in $B_1 \cap B_2$. It is clear that $B_3 \in U_1 \cap U_2$, and hence$U_1 \cap U_2$ is open in $\mathcal{T}$.

Now for the inductive step, assume that we have shown that $\bigcap_{j=1}^{n-1} U_j$ is open in $\mathcal{T}$. We define $V = \bigcap_{j=1}^{n-1} U_j$, which is open by the inductive hypothesis. Then $V \cap U_n$ collapses to the base case The inductive step and the proof is completed. ■

Theorem 39.3.2.
Let $\mathcal{B}$ be a basis for a topology $\mathcal{T}$ on X. Then $\mathcal{T}$ equals the collection of all unions of elements of $\mathcal{B}$.

Proof.
Suppose that $\mathbf{B}$ is the collection of all unions of elements of $\mathcal{B}$. We wish to show that $\mathcal{T} = \mathbf{B}$.
$\mathbf{B} \subseteq \mathcal{T}$ since each member of $\mathcal{B}$ is open in $\mathcal{T}$ and since $\mathcal{T}$ is a topology, their unions are also members of $\mathcal{T}$.

One the other hand, we pick any $U \in \mathcal{T}$. Since $\mathcal{B}$ generates the topology $\mathcal{T}$, for every $x \in U$, we may find $B_x \in \mathcal{B}$ such that $x \in B_x \subseteq U$. So we may write

$$U = \bigcup_{x \in U} B_x.$$

This completes the proof. ■

Theorem 39.3.3.
Let $(X, \mathcal{T})$ be a topological space. Suppose that $\mathcal{C}$ is a collection of open sets of X such that for each open set U of X and each element x of U, there is a $C \in \mathcal{C}$ such that $x \in C \subseteq U$. This qualifies $\mathcal{C}$ as a basis for the topology on X.

Proof.
We need to first verify that the collection $\mathcal{C}$ satisfies the conditions laid out in definition 39.3.1.
The first condition is easy, we simply take our open set to be X and the conditions of the statement of the theorem ensure that there is some element $C \in \mathcal{C}$ for which $x \in C$.
For the second condition, pick $C_1, C_2 \in \mathcal{C}$ such that $C_1 \cap C_2 \neq \varnothing$. Since C_1 and C_2 are open, it follows that $C_1 \cap C_2$ is also open. Hence for any $x \in C_1 \cap C_3$, there is some C_3 for which $x \in C_3 \subseteq C_1 \cap C_2$. This shows that $\mathcal{C}$ is a basis for a topology on X.

All this shows is that $\mathcal{C}$ generates *some* topology $\mathcal{T}^{'}$. We want to show that $\mathcal{T} = \mathcal{T}^{'}$. If $U \in \mathcal{T}$, then for each $x \in U$, there is some $C \in \mathcal{C}$ for which $x \in C \subseteq U$. By the last sentence of definition 39.3.1, U must belong to the topology generated $\mathcal{C}$ and hence $U \in \mathcal{T}^{'}$.
Conversely, if $U^{'} \in \mathcal{T}^{'}$, by theorem 39.3.2,

$$U^{'} = \bigcup_{x \in U^{'}} C_x.$$

Since each C_x is open in $\mathcal{T}$, it follows that $U^{'}$ is also open in $\mathcal{T}$ so $U^{'} \subseteq \mathcal{T}$. This completes the proof. ■

40 Connectedness and Compactness

§40.1 Connectedness

Definition 40.1.1.
A topological space X is said to be **disconnected** if there exists non-empty open sets U and V of X such that

$$U \cup V = X$$

and

$$U \cap V = \varnothing.$$

A topological space is **connected** if it is not disconnected.

Here is a useful equivalent condition for connectedness.

Theorem 40.1.1.
A topological space X is connected if and only if every continuous characteristic function $\chi_U : X \to \{0, 1\}$ is constant.

Proof.
For a given subset $U \subseteq X$, recall that the characteristic function χ_U is defined by

$$\chi_U(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x \in U \\ 0 & \text{if } x \notin U \end{cases}.$$

$\Rightarrow$ Suppose there exists a continuous, non-constant characteristic function χ_U for some $U \subset X$. Then by definition,

$$\chi_U^{-1}(1) = U \quad \text{and} \quad \chi_U^{-1}(0) = X - U.$$

Since χ_U is non-constant, both U and $X - U$ are nonempty. And since χ_U is continuous and $\{0, 1\}$ has the discrete topology, both U and $X - U$ are open in X.
Thus, X is the union of two disjoint, nonempty open sets so X is disconnected.
$\Leftarrow$ Now assume that X is disconnected. Then there exist disjoint, non-empty open sets U and V in X such that $U \cup V = X$.
Consider the characteristic function $\chi_U : X \to \{0, 1\}$. Since U and $V = X - U$ are both open, and $\{0, 1\}$ has the discrete topology, the preimages

$$\chi_U^{-1}(1) = U \quad \text{and} \quad \chi_U^{-1}(0) = V$$

are open. Hence, χ_U is continuous. Moreover, it is non-constant, since both U and V are non-empty. This completes the proof. ∎

Corollary.
Suppose X is a connected topological space and Y is any topological space. If $f : X \to Y$ is continuous, then the image $f(X)$, equipped with the subspace topology from Y, is connected.

Proof.
If $f(X)$ contains exactly one point, the result holds trivially, since a one-point space is connected. So assume $f(X)$ contains more than one point.
Suppose, for a contradiction, that $f(X)$ is not connected. Then, by the previous theorem, there exists a non-constant continuous characteristic function $\chi_U : f(X) \to \{0, 1\}$ for some proper, nonempty clopen subset $U \subset f(X)$.
Now consider the composition $\chi_U \circ f : X \to \{0, 1\}$. This map is continuous, since it is the composition of continuous functions.
Moreover, since f is surjective onto $f(X)$, the composition is also non-constant.
But this contradicts the connectedness of X, since we've constructed a non-constant continuous characteristic function on X.
Hence, $f(X)$ must be connected. ∎

Exercise 40.1.1.
Show that a finite set of points in a T_2 (Hausdorff) space is not connected.

Solution.

Let $S = \{x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n\} \subseteq X$, where X is a T_2 space and $n \geq 2$. We aim to show that S, with the subspace topology inherited from X, is not connected.
Since X is Hausdorff, we can find pairwise disjoint open sets $U_{x_1}, \ldots, U_{x_n}$ in X, each containing x_i.
Now consider the subspace topology on S. Let

$$U = U_{x_1} \cap S, \qquad V = \bigcup_{j=2}^{n} \left(U_{x_j} \cap S \right).$$

Then U and V are open in the subspace topology on S, disjoint by construction, and cover S, since each $x_i \in S$ is contained in some U_{x_i}.
Thus, $S = U \cup V$ is a separation of S into two nonempty, disjoint, open sets. Therefore, S is disconnected. ●

Functional Analysis

41 Examples of New Spaces 173
41.1 Sequence Spaces 173
41.2 Function Spaces 175

42 Hilbert Spaces 176
42.1 Hilbert Spaces 176
42.1.1 Continuity of the Inner Product and Norm 176
42.1.2 Definition and Basic Examples 177

43 Linear Maps 178
43.1 Linear Maps between Hilbert Spaces 178

41 Examples of New Spaces

§41.1 Sequence Spaces

Definition 41.1.1.
The space ℓ_0 (or $c_{00}(\mathbb{K})$) consists of all $\mathbb{K}$-valued sequences $(x_n)_{n=1}^{\infty}$ such that $x_n = 0$ for all but finitely many $n \in \mathbb{N}$.

Lemma 41.1.1.
ℓ_0 is a $\mathbb{K}$-vector space where for all $\mathbf{x} = (x_n)_{n=1}^{\infty}, \mathbf{y} = (y_n)_{n=1}^{\infty} \in \ell_0$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{K}$, we have

$$\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y} := (x_n + y_n)_{n=1}^{\infty} \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda\mathbf{x} := (\lambda x_n)_{n=1}^{\infty}.$$

Proof.
We need verify that the conditions laid out in Definition 21.1.1 hold.

Closure under addition: Suppose that $\mathbf{x} = (x_n)_{n=1}^{\infty}, \ \mathbf{y} = (y_n)_{n=1}^{\infty} \in \ell_0$. Then there exists $k_1, k_2 \in \mathbb{N}$ such that if $n_1 > k_1$, $x_{n_1} = 0$ and if $n_2 > k_2$, $y_{n_2} = 0$. So pick $k = \max\{k_1, k_2\}$. It is clear that if $n > k$, we have $x_n + y_n = 0$ so $\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y} \in \ell_0$.

Closure under scalar multiplication: Again, if $\mathbf{x} = (x_n)_{n=1}^{\infty} \in \ell_0$, there exists a $k \in \mathbb{N}$ such that if $n > k$, $x_n = 0$. So for any $\lambda \in \mathbb{K}$, we can choose the same k so that if $n > k$, $\lambda x_n = 0$. So $\lambda\mathbf{x} \in \ell_0$.

Commutativity: We have

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y} &= (x_n + y_n)_{n=1}^{\infty} \\
&= (y_n + x_n)_{n=1}^{\infty} && \text{(Since } x_n \text{ and } y_n \text{ are elements of } \mathbb{K}\text{.)} \\
&= \mathbf{y} + \mathbf{x}
\end{aligned}$$

Associativity: If $\mathbf{x} = (x_n)_{n=1}^{\infty}, \mathbf{y} = (y_n)_{n=1}^{\infty}, \mathbf{z} = (z_n)_{n=1}^{\infty} \in \ell_0$, then

$$\begin{aligned}
(\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y}) + \mathbf{z} &= (x_n + y_n)_{n=1}^{\infty} + \mathbf{z} \\
&= ((x_n + y_n) + z_n)_{n=1}^{\infty} \\
&= (x_n + (y_n + z_n))_{n=1}^{\infty} && \text{(Inheritance of associativity from } \mathbb{K}\text{)} \\
&= \mathbf{x} + (y_n + z_n)_{n=1}^{\infty} \\
&= \mathbf{x} + (\mathbf{y} + \mathbf{z})
\end{aligned}$$

Similarly if $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{K}$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
(\alpha\beta)\mathbf{x} &= ((\alpha\beta)x_n)_{n=1}^{\infty} \\
&= (\alpha(\beta x_n))_{n=1}^{\infty} \\
&= \alpha(\beta x_n)_{n=1}^{\infty} \\
&= \alpha(\beta\mathbf{x})
\end{aligned}$$

Distributive Properties: For $\alpha \in \mathbb{K}$ and $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \in \ell_0$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\alpha[\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y}] &= \alpha\left[(x_n + y_n)_{n=1}^{\infty}\right] \\
&= (\alpha(x_n + y_n))_{n=1}^{\infty} \\
&= (\alpha x_n + \alpha y_n)_{n=1}^{\infty} \\
&= \alpha\mathbf{x} + \alpha\mathbf{y}
\end{aligned}$$

Similarly, if $\beta \in \mathbb{K}$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}(\alpha+\beta)\,\mathbf{x} &= (\alpha+\beta)\,(x_n)_{n=1}^{\infty}\\ &= ((\alpha+\beta)x_n)_{n=1}^{\infty}\\ &= (\alpha x_n+\beta x_n)_{n=1}^{\infty}\\ &= \alpha\mathbf{x}+\beta\mathbf{x}\end{aligned}$$

■

Exercise 41.1.1.
Find a basis for ℓ^0.

Solution.
For each $k \in \mathbb{N}$, define the sequence

$$\mathbf{e}_k = (e_n)_{n=1}^{\infty}, \quad e_n = \begin{cases} 1, & n = k, \\ 0, & n \neq k. \end{cases}$$

Let

$$B = \{\mathbf{e}_k \mid k \in \mathbb{N}\}.$$

Each $\mathbf{e}_k$ has exactly one nonzero coordinate, hence belongs to ℓ_0.
Suppose

$$\sum_{j=1}^{m} a_j \mathbf{e}_{k_j} = \mathbf{0}, \qquad a_j \in \mathbb{K},\ k_j \in \mathbb{N}.$$

Looking at the k_i-th coordinate, we obtain $a_i = 0$ for each i. Hence the family B is linearly independent.
Let $\mathbf{x} = (x_n) \in \ell^0$. By definition, only finitely many x_n are nonzero. If $x_j \neq 0$, then

$$\mathbf{x} = \sum_{j:\, x_j \neq 0} x_j \mathbf{e}_j,$$

which is a finite linear combination of elements of B. Thus, $\mathbf{x}$ lies in the span of B.

●

Definition 41.1.2.
A $\mathbb{K}$ sequence $\mathbf{x} = (x_n)_{n=1}^{\infty}$ is a member of ℓ_p for $1 \leq p < \infty$ if the sum

$$\sum_{j=1}^{\infty} |x_j|^p < \infty.$$

Example 41.1.1.
Let H denote the harmonic sequence $\left(\frac{1}{n}\right)_{n=1}^{\infty}$. It is well-known that

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2} = \frac{\pi}{6}$$

so $H \in \ell_2$. However, it is also know that

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} \quad \text{diverges}$$

so $H \notin \ell_1$.

Exercise 41.1.2.
Let $\mathbf{V}$ be any inner product space. If $||\mathbf{x}_n||$ converges to $||\mathbf{x}||$ and $\langle \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{x}\rangle$ converges to $\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}\rangle$, then $\mathbf{x}_n$ converges to $\mathbf{x}$.

Solution.
If $\mathbf{x}_n$ is an eventually zero sequence and $\mathbf{x} = 0$, the result is trivial so let us assume otherwise.
Since $||\mathbf{x}_n||$ converges to $||\mathbf{x}||$ and and $\langle \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{x} \rangle$ converges to $\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x} \rangle$, we can simultaneously chose a sufficiently large n such that

$$\left| \, ||\mathbf{x}_n|| - ||\mathbf{x}|| \, \right| < \frac{\epsilon^2}{2\left(||\mathbf{x}_n|| + ||\mathbf{x}||\right)} \quad \text{and} \quad |\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x} \rangle - \langle \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{x} \rangle| < \frac{\epsilon^2}{4}$$

Now we apply the result from Exercise 25.1.7.

$$\begin{aligned}
||\mathbf{x}_n - \mathbf{x}||^2 &= ||\mathbf{x}_n||^2 + ||\mathbf{x}||^2 - 2\mathfrak{Re}\left(\langle \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{x} \rangle\right) \\
&= ||\mathbf{x}_n||^2 + ||\mathbf{x}||^2 - 2||\mathbf{x}||^2 + 2||\mathbf{x}||^2 - 2\mathfrak{Re}\left(\langle \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{x} \rangle\right) && \text{(add and subtract } 2||\mathbf{x}||^2\text{)} \\
&= ||\mathbf{x}_n||^2 - ||\mathbf{x}||^2 + 2||\mathbf{x}||^2 - 2\mathfrak{Re}\left(\langle \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{x} \rangle\right) \\
&= ||\mathbf{x}_n||^2 - ||\mathbf{x}||^2 + 2\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x} \rangle - 2\mathfrak{Re}\left(\langle \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{x} \rangle\right) \\
&= ||\mathbf{x}_n||^2 - ||\mathbf{x}||^2 + 2\mathfrak{Re}\left(\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x} \rangle\right) - 2\mathfrak{Re}\left(\langle \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{x} \rangle\right) && \text{(since } \langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x} \rangle \text{ is real)} \\
&= ||\mathbf{x}_n||^2 - ||\mathbf{x}||^2 + 2\mathfrak{Re}\left(\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x} \rangle - \langle \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{x} \rangle\right) && \text{(linearity of } \mathfrak{Re}\text{)} \\
&= \left(||\mathbf{x}_n|| + ||\mathbf{x}||\right)\left(||\mathbf{x}_n|| - ||\mathbf{x}||\right) + 2\mathfrak{Re}\left(\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x} \rangle - \langle \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{x} \rangle\right) && \text{(difference of squares)} \\
&\leq \left(||\mathbf{x}_n|| + ||\mathbf{x}||\right)\left| \, ||\mathbf{x}_n|| - ||\mathbf{x}|| \, \right| + 2\mathfrak{Re}\left(\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x} \rangle - \langle \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{x} \rangle\right) && \text{(since } a \leq |a| \text{ for real } a\text{)} \\
&\leq \left(||\mathbf{x}_n|| + ||\mathbf{x}||\right)\left| \, ||\mathbf{x}_n|| - ||\mathbf{x}|| \, \right| + 2|\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x} \rangle - \langle \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{x} \rangle| && \text{(since } |\mathfrak{Re}(z)| \leq |z|\text{)} \\
&< \left(||\mathbf{x}_n|| + ||\mathbf{x}||\right)\frac{\epsilon^2}{2\left(||\mathbf{x}_n|| + ||\mathbf{x}||\right)} + 2\frac{\epsilon^2}{4} && \text{(by choice of } n\text{)} \\
&= \frac{\epsilon^2}{2} + \frac{\epsilon^2}{2} \\
&= \epsilon^2
\end{aligned}$$

So $||\mathbf{x}_n - \mathbf{x}||^2 < \epsilon^2$ for sufficiently large n or $||\mathbf{x}_n - \mathbf{x}|| < \epsilon$, which is what we wanted. ●

§41.2 Function Spaces

Exercise 41.2.1.
Suppose $f \in \mathcal{C}[0,1]$ has sup norm ϵ. What is the largest possible value for the norm of f induced by the inner product

$$\langle f, g \rangle = \int_0^1 f(x)g(x)\,\mathrm{d}x\,.$$

Solution.
Since f has sup norm ϵ it follows that $|f(x)| \leq \epsilon$ for all $x \in [0,1]$. So let us choose $f(x) = \epsilon$ for all $x \in [0,1]$ Then

$$\begin{aligned}
||f|| &= \sqrt{\langle f, f \rangle} \\
&= \sqrt{\int_0^1 f(x)^2\,\mathrm{d}x} \\
&= \sqrt{\epsilon^2}
\end{aligned}$$

So $||f|| = \epsilon$. ●

42 Hilbert Spaces

§42.1 Hilbert Spaces

Hilbert spaces provide the natural setting for extending geometric and analytical results from finite-dimensional inner product spaces to infinite dimensions. While finite-dimensional inner product spaces are automatically complete, this fails in infinite dimensions. We need an additional completeness assumption to ensure Cauchy sequences converge. This completeness allows us to perform limiting operations and develop a robust theory of approximation, projection, and convergence.

§42.1.1 Continuity of the Inner Product and Norm

Before defining Hilbert spaces, we establish some fundamental continuity properties. Although the metric on an inner product space is induced by the inner product (via the norm), the continuity of the inner product and norm with respect to this metric requires proof. These results will be used in the chapter on Banach spaces as well.

Theorem 42.1.1.
Let $\mathbf{V}$ be an inner product space. If the sequences $\{\mathbf{x}_n\}$ converges to $\mathbf{x}$ and $\{\mathbf{y}_n\}$ converges to $\mathbf{y}$, then $\{\langle \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{y}_n\rangle\}$ converges to $\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}\rangle$.

Proof.
We have

$$\begin{aligned}
|\langle \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{y}_n\rangle - \langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}\rangle| &= |\langle \mathbf{x}_n - \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}_n - \mathbf{y}\rangle + \langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}_n - \mathbf{y}\rangle + \langle \mathbf{x}_n - \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}\rangle| && \text{(Exercise 25.1.1)}\\
&\le |\langle \mathbf{x}_n - \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}_n - \mathbf{y}\rangle| + |\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}_n - \mathbf{y}\rangle| + |\langle \mathbf{x}_n - \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}\rangle| && \text{(Triangle inequality)}\\
&\le \|\mathbf{x}_n - \mathbf{x}\|\,\|\mathbf{y}_n - \mathbf{y}\| + \|\mathbf{x}\|\,\|\mathbf{y}_n - \mathbf{y}\| + \|\mathbf{x}_n - \mathbf{x}\|\,\|\mathbf{y}\|. && \text{(Cauchy-Schwarz inequality)}
\end{aligned}$$

Given $\epsilon > 0$, choose N sufficiently large so that for all $n \ge N$,

$$\|\mathbf{x}_n - \mathbf{x}\| < \min\left\{\sqrt{\frac{\epsilon}{3}}, \frac{\epsilon}{3\,(\|\mathbf{y}\| + 1)}\right\}$$

and

$$\|\mathbf{y}_n - \mathbf{y}\| < \min\left\{\sqrt{\frac{\epsilon}{3}}, \frac{\epsilon}{3\,(\|\mathbf{x}\| + 1)}\right\}.$$

Then for $n \ge N$,

$$\begin{aligned}
|\langle \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{y}_n\rangle - \langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}\rangle| &\le \|\mathbf{x}_n - \mathbf{x}\|\,\|\mathbf{y}_n - \mathbf{y}\| + \|\mathbf{x}\|\,\|\mathbf{y}_n - \mathbf{y}\| + \|\mathbf{x}_n - \mathbf{x}\|\,\|\mathbf{y}\|\\
&< \sqrt{\frac{\epsilon}{3}}\sqrt{\frac{\epsilon}{3}} + \frac{\|\mathbf{x}\|}{\|\mathbf{x}\| + 1}\cdot\frac{\epsilon}{3} + \frac{\|\mathbf{y}\|}{\|\mathbf{y}\| + 1}\cdot\frac{\epsilon}{3}\\
&< \frac{\epsilon}{3} + \frac{\epsilon}{3} + \frac{\epsilon}{3} = \epsilon.
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore $\langle \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{y}_n\rangle \to \langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}\rangle$. ∎

Theorem 42.1.2.
If $\{\mathbf{x}_n\}$ converges to $\mathbf{x}$ in a normed vector space $\mathbf{V}$, then $\|\mathbf{x}_n\|$ converges to $\|\mathbf{x}\|$.

Proof.
If $\mathbf{V}$ is an inner product space and the norm is induced by the inner product, then the result is simply a corollary of Theorem 42.1.1.
Otherwise, we proceed directly. For any $\epsilon > 0$, pick N sufficiently large so that if $n \ge N$, then $\|\mathbf{x}_n - \mathbf{x}\| < \epsilon$. Then for $n \ge N$,

$$\begin{aligned}
\big|\|\mathbf{x}_n\| - \|\mathbf{x}\|\big| &\le \|\mathbf{x}_n - \mathbf{x}\| && \text{(reverse triangle inequality)}\\
&< \epsilon
\end{aligned}$$

Hence, $\|\mathbf{x}_n\| \to \|\mathbf{x}\|$. ■

Theorem 42.1.3.
If $\{\mathbf{x}_n\}$ and $\{\mathbf{y}_n\}$ is a Cauchy sequence of vectors in an inner product space $\mathbf{V}$, then $\langle \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{y}_n \rangle$ is a Cauchy sequence of scalars.

Proof.
The proof is similar to the proof of Theorem 42.1.1 and, as such, can be skipped.
For any $m, n \in \mathbb{N}$, we have

$$|\langle \mathbf{x}_m, \mathbf{y}_m \rangle - \langle \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{y}_n \rangle| = |\langle \mathbf{x}_m - \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{y}_m - \mathbf{y}_n \rangle + \langle \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{y}_m - \mathbf{y}_n \rangle + \langle \mathbf{x}_m - \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{y}_n \rangle|$$

■

§42.1.2 Definition and Basic Examples

Definition 42.1.1.
A complete inner-product space is called a **Hilbert space**.

43 Linear Maps

§43.1 Linear Maps between Hilbert Spaces

Theorem 43.1.1.
Let $T \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{H}, \mathbf{K})$. The following are equivalent:

i) T is continuous

ii) T is continuous at some $\mathbf{x}_0$

iii) T is continuous at $\mathbf{0}$

iv) $\{||T(\mathbf{x})||_{\mathbf{K}} \mid ||\mathbf{x}||_{\mathbf{H}} = 1\}$ is bounded

v) There exists an $M \geq 0$ such that $||T(\mathbf{x})||_{\mathbf{K}} < M||\mathbf{x}||_{\mathbf{H}}$ for all $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbf{H}$

Proof.

■

Algebraic Topology

44 The Fundamental Group 181
44.1 Homotopy and Paths 181

44 The Fundamental Group

§44.1 Homotopy and Paths

Definition 44.1.1.
Let $f, g : X \to Y$ be continuous maps. We say that f and g are **homotopic** if there exists a **homotopy** between them; that is, there exists a continuous function
$$H : [0,1] \times X \to Y$$
such that
$$H(0,x) = f(x) \quad \text{and} \quad H(1,x) = g(x) \quad \text{for all } x \in X.$$
Moreover, we say that two spaces X and Y are **homotopy equivalent** if there exist continuous maps $f : X \to Y$ and $g : Y \to X$ such that $g \circ f$ is homotopic to Id_X and $f \circ g$ is homotopic to Id_Y.

Lemma 44.1.1.
Homotopy defines an equivalence relation on the set of continuous maps $X \to Y$.

Proof.
We verify the three properties of an equivalence relation.
Reflexivity: For any $f : X \to Y$, we have $f \sim f$ via the constant homotopy
$$H(t,x) = f(x) \quad \text{for all } t \in [0,1],\ x \in X.$$
As a bonus, this shows that every continuous function lies in some equivalence class.
Symmetry: Suppose $f \sim g$ via a homotopy H. Define
$$H'(t,x) := H(1-t,x).$$
Then H' is continuous, $H'(0,x) = g(x)$, and $H'(1,x) = f(x)$, so $g \sim f$.
Transitivity: Suppose $f_1 \sim f_2$ via H_1 and $f_2 \sim f_3$ via H_2. Define
$$H(t,x) = \begin{cases} H_1(2t,x), & 0 \le t \le \frac{1}{2}, \\ H_2(2t-1,x), & \frac{1}{2} < t \le 1. \end{cases}$$
The function H is continuous since H_1 and H_2 are continuous and match at $t = \frac{1}{2}$, where $H_1(1,x) = H_2(0,x) = f_2(x)$. Moreover, $H(0,x) = f_1(x)$ and $H(1,x) = f_3(x)$, so $f_1 \sim f_3$. ■

For now, we will limit our attention to homotopies of loops; that is, we will consider maps
$$\gamma : [0,1] \to X$$
such that γ is continuous and $\gamma(0) = \gamma(1)$.

Definition 44.1.2.
Let Γ_x denote the set of loops $\gamma : [0,1] \to X$ with $\gamma(0) = \gamma(1) = x$. We define an equivalence relation $\sim$ on Γ_x by setting $\gamma_1 \sim \gamma_2$ if there exists a homotopy between them, leaving the endpoints fixed. A **homotopy class** is an equivalence class of loops under this relation, denoted $[\gamma]$.

Lemma 44.1.2.
Concatenation of loops induces a well-defined group operation on the homotopy classes $\Gamma_x/\sim$.

Proof.
We must verify that concatenation gives $\Gamma_x/\sim$ the structure of a group. This requires showing well-definedness and the three group axioms.

Suppose $\alpha_1 \sim \alpha_2$ and $\beta_1 \sim \beta_2$. We need to show that $\alpha_1 \cdot \beta_1 \sim \alpha_2 \cdot \beta_2$.

First, suppose $\alpha_1 \sim \alpha_2$. We show that $\alpha_1 \cdot \beta \sim \alpha_2 \cdot \beta$ for any loop β. By definition:

$$(\alpha_i \cdot \beta)(t) = \begin{cases} \alpha_i(2t) & 0 \le t \le \frac{1}{2} \\ \beta(2t-1) & \frac{1}{2} \le t \le 1 \end{cases}$$

Since $\alpha_1 \sim \alpha_2$, there exists a homotopy $H(s,t)$ with $H(0,t) = \alpha_1(t)$ and $H(1,t) = \alpha_2(t)$. Define

$$H^{'}(s,t) = \begin{cases} H(s,2t) & 0 \le t \le \frac{1}{2} \\ \beta(2t-1) & \frac{1}{2} \le t \le 1 \end{cases}$$

Then $H^{'}(0,t) = (\alpha_1 \cdot \beta)(t)$ and $H^{'}(1,t) = (\alpha_2 \cdot \beta)(t)$, so $\alpha_1 \cdot \beta \sim \alpha_2 \cdot \beta$.
Similarly, if $\beta_1 \sim \beta_2$, then $\alpha \cdot \beta_1 \sim \alpha \cdot \beta_2$ for any α. Combining these results shows that the operation $[\alpha] \cdot [\beta] = [\alpha \cdot \beta]$ is well-defined on homotopy classes.

Let $\mathbf{1}$ denote the constant loop $\mathbf{1}(t) = x$ for all $t \in [0,1]$. For any loop γ:

$$(\mathbf{1} \cdot \gamma)(t) = \begin{cases} \mathbf{1}(2t) = x & 0 \le t \le \frac{1}{2} \\ \gamma(2t-1) & \frac{1}{2} \le t \le 1 \end{cases}$$

Define a homotopy $F(s,t)$ by:

$$F(s,t) = \begin{cases} x & 0 \le t \le \frac{1-s}{2} \\ \gamma\left(\frac{2t-(1-s)}{1+s}\right) & \frac{1-s}{2} \le t \le 1 \end{cases}$$

Then $F(0,t) = (\mathbf{1} \cdot \gamma)(t)$ and $F(1,t) = \gamma(t)$, so $\mathbf{1} \cdot \gamma \sim \gamma$. Similarly, $\gamma \cdot \mathbf{1} \sim \gamma$.
For any loop γ, define its inverse $\overline{\gamma}$ by $\overline{\gamma}(t) = \gamma(1-t)$. We show that $\gamma \cdot \overline{\gamma} \sim \mathbf{1}$.
The concatenation $\gamma \cdot \overline{\gamma}$ is given by:

$$(\gamma \cdot \overline{\gamma})(t) = \begin{cases} \gamma(2t) & 0 \le t \le \frac{1}{2} \\ \gamma(2(1-t)) & \frac{1}{2} \le t \le 1 \end{cases}$$

Define a homotopy $G(s,t)$ by:

$$G(s,t) = \begin{cases} \gamma(2t(1-s)) & 0 \le t \le \frac{1}{2} \\ \gamma(2(1-t)(1-s)) & \frac{1}{2} \le t \le 1 \end{cases}$$

Then $G(0,t) = (\gamma \cdot \overline{\gamma})(t)$ and $G(1,t) = \gamma(0) = x$ for all t, so $\gamma \cdot \overline{\gamma} \sim \mathbf{1}$. Similarly, $\overline{\gamma} \cdot \gamma \sim \mathbf{1}$.

For loops α, β, γ, we need $(\alpha \cdot \beta) \cdot \gamma \sim \alpha \cdot (\beta \cdot \gamma)$.
The loop $(\alpha \cdot \beta) \cdot \gamma$ is defined by:

$$((\alpha \cdot \beta) \cdot \gamma)(t) = \begin{cases} \alpha(4t) & 0 \le t \le \frac{1}{4} \\ \beta(4t-1) & \frac{1}{4} \le t \le \frac{1}{2} \\ \gamma(2t-1) & \frac{1}{2} \le t \le 1 \end{cases}$$

The loop $\alpha \cdot (\beta \cdot \gamma)$ is defined by:

$$(\alpha \cdot (\beta \cdot \gamma))(t) = \begin{cases} \alpha(2t) & 0 \le t \le \frac{1}{2} \\ \beta(4t-2) & \frac{1}{2} \le t \le \frac{3}{4} \\ \gamma(4t-3) & \frac{3}{4} \le t \le 1 \end{cases}$$

These differ only in the timing of transitions between the three constituent loops. A linear reparametrization homotopy can interpolate between these two parameterizations, establishing the required homotopy equivalence.

Therefore, $\Gamma_x / \sim$ forms a group under the concatenation operation. ■

Definition 44.1.3.
Let X be a topological space and $x \in X$. We will call $\Gamma_x / \sim$, the **fundamental group with basepoint at x** and denote it by $\pi_1(X, x)$.

Manifolds

45 Definitions and Examples 185

46 Maps 186
46.1 Smooth maps to $\mathbb{R}^n$ 186

47 Tangent Vectors 187
47.1 Different Ways of Defining Tangent Vectors 187
47.1.1 Algebraically 187
47.1.2 As an Equivalence Class of Tangents to Paths 187

45 Definitions and Examples

Definition 45.0.1.
A **topological manifold** of dimension n is a second-countable Hausdorff topological space M that is locally homeomorphic to $\mathbb{R}^n$, together with a collection of open sets U_α and corresponding homeomorphisms $\varphi_\alpha : U_\alpha \to \mathbb{R}^n$ where $\tilde{U}_\alpha = \varphi_\alpha(U_\alpha)$ denotes the image of U_α under φ_α such that

i) The collection $\{U_\alpha\}$ covers M.

ii) For any α, β such that $U_\alpha \cap U_\beta \neq \varnothing$, the **transition maps** $\varphi_\alpha \circ \varphi_\beta^{-1} : \varphi_\beta(U_\alpha \cap U_\beta) \to \varphi_\alpha(U_\alpha \cap U_\beta)$ are continuous.

The pairs $(U_\alpha, \varphi_\alpha)$ are called **charts**, and the collection $\{(U_\alpha, \varphi_\alpha)\}$ forms an **atlas** for M.
Applying additional conditions to the second criterion will give us different types of manifolds.

- If the transition maps are differentiable, we say that the manifold is differentiable.

! If the transition maps are smooth, then the manifold is smooth.

- If the transition maps are analytic, then the manifold is analytic.
- If the transition maps are holomorphic, then the manifold is complex.

When we say manifold without any other adjective, we will typically mean that it is a smooth manifold.

Exercise 45.0.1.
Show that the following three definitions of topological manifold are equivalent:

i) The definition given above (where $\tilde{U}_\alpha = \varphi_\alpha(U_\alpha)$ can be any open subset of $\mathbb{R}^n$).

ii) The same definition, but requiring each $\varphi_\alpha : U_\alpha \to \mathbb{R}^n$ to be a homeomorphism onto all of $\mathbb{R}^n$.

iii) The same definition, but requiring each $\tilde{U}_\alpha = \varphi_\alpha(U_\alpha)$ to be an open ball in $\mathbb{R}^n$.

Solution.
It is sufficient to just show **(i)** $\iff$ **(iii)** and **(ii)** $\iff$ **(iii)**.
(iii) $\Rightarrow$ **(i)** Trivial: open balls are themselves open subsets of $\mathbb{R}^n$.
(i) $\Rightarrow$ **(iii)** Suppose $p \in M$ and pick φ_p and U_p containing p compliant with the conditions of **(i)**. Given

$$\varphi_p^{-1} : \widetilde{U_p} \to U_p$$

we may restrict φ_p^{-1} to an an open ball $B_{\varphi_p(p)}$ containing $\varphi_p(p)$ since $\widetilde{U_p}$ is open in $\mathbb{R}^n$. The restriction map

$$\varphi_p^{-1}\Big|_{B_{\varphi_p(p)}} : B_{\varphi_p(p)} \to \varphi_p^{-1}\left(B_{\varphi_p(p)}\right)$$

is a local homeomorphism that satisfies the goal conditions.
(iii) $\Rightarrow$ **(ii)** Suppose that φ_α maps the open set U_α to $B(\mathbf{x};\epsilon)$ with $\varphi_\alpha(p) = \mathbf{x}$. We then further define a function $f : B(\mathbf{x};\epsilon) \to \mathbb{R}^n$ by

$$f(\mathbf{y}) = \begin{cases} \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{2\epsilon} \cdot \|\mathbf{y}-\mathbf{x}\|\right) \cdot \dfrac{\mathbf{y}-\mathbf{x}}{\|\mathbf{y}-\mathbf{x}\|} & \text{if } \mathbf{y} \neq \mathbf{x} \\ \mathbf{0} & \text{if } \mathbf{y} = \mathbf{x} \end{cases}$$

Although the definition of f looks a bit unwieldy, all it is really doing is shifting the epsilon ball so it is centered at $\mathbf{0}$, then stretching it outward along each ray with a tangent-based scaling that sends the boundary to infinity. The center is set to map to $\mathbf{0}$ by hand. We leave it to the reader to verify that f is doing what we claim and that it is a homeomorphism between $B(\mathbf{x};\epsilon)$ and $\mathbb{R}^n$. The composition $f \circ \varphi_\alpha$ is the desired homeomorphism between U_α and $\mathbb{R}^n$.
(ii) $\Rightarrow$ **(iii)** Assume the conditions of **(ii)**. Composing φ_α with f^{-1} yields a chart whose image is an open ball. ●

46 Maps

§46.1 Smooth maps to $\mathbb{R}^n$

Definition 46.1.1.
Let M be a manifold. A function $f : M \to \mathbb{R}$ is smooth at $p \in M$ if there exists a chart, $(U_\alpha, \varphi_\alpha)$ the map

$$f \circ \varphi_\alpha^{-1} : \widetilde{U_\alpha} \to \mathbb{R}$$

is smooth at $\varphi_\alpha(p)$. A map is smooth if it smooth everywhere.

Exercise 46.1.1.
If $f : M \to \mathbb{R}$ is smooth at p for a particular chart, show it is smooth for all charts containing p.

Solution.
Suppose that f is smooth at p in the chart $(U_\alpha, \varphi_\alpha)$. Pick chart (U_β, φ_β) that contains p. Then

$$f \circ \varphi_\beta^{-1} = \left(f \circ \varphi_\alpha^{-1}\right) \circ \left(\varphi_\alpha \circ \varphi_\beta^{-1}\right) : \varphi_\beta\left(U_\alpha \cap U_\beta\right) \to \mathbb{R}$$

is smooth at $\varphi_\beta(p)$ as it is the composition of smooth maps. ●

Exercise 46.1.2.
Suppose that $f : M \to \mathbb{R}$ and $g : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ are both smooth. Show that $g \circ f : M \to \mathbb{R}$ is smooth.

Solution.

●

Theorem 46.1.1.
Let $\mathcal{C}^\infty(M)$ be the set of all smooth maps $M \to \mathbb{R}$. Then $\mathcal{C}^\infty(M)$ is a commutative ring as well as a commutative and associative $\mathbb{R}$-algebra where

$$(f+g)(p) := f(p) + g(p)$$
$$(fg)(p) := f(p)g(p)$$
$$(\lambda f) := \lambda f(p)$$

For every $f, g \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(M)$, $p \in M$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$.

Proof.

■

47 Tangent Vectors

The goal of this part is to develop and expand the mechanisms of calculus to smooth manifolds. This chapter aims to introduce one of the main actors: the tangent vector. At first, it might be unclear how one defines a vector on a manifold. We will present several ways to do so, as well as convince you of their equivalence and show that they really do behave like vectors in "flat space."

§47.1 Different Ways of Defining Tangent Vectors

§47.1.1 Algebraically

If you go back to the multivariable calculus part, you will see a rather inconspicuous operation called the "directional derivative." Given a function $f : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$, a point $a \in \mathbb{R}^n$, and a direction $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbb{R}^n$, the directional derivative tells you the rate of change of f at a in the direction of $\mathbf{v}$. It has the benefit of being easy to compute, namely $(D_{\mathbf{v}}(f))(a) = (\nabla f)(a) \cdot \mathbf{v}$, and it satisfies established derivative rules, namely linearity and the **Leibniz rule.**
To define a vector on a manifold, we will leverage a surprising fact: if we have a linear map $\mathbf{v} : \mathcal{C}^\infty(M) \to \mathbb{R}$ that satisfies the Leibniz rule, there is sufficient information to *define* a vector from this.

Definition 47.1.1.
Let M be a manifold and let $p \in M$. A **derivation at p** is a linear map

$$\mathbf{v} : C_p^\infty(M) \to \mathbb{R},$$

where $C_p^\infty(M)$ denotes the algebra of germs of smooth functions at p, such that the Leibniz rule is satisfied: for all $f, g \in C_p^\infty(M)$,

$$\mathbf{v}(fg) = f(p)\,\mathbf{v}(g) + g(p)\,\mathbf{v}(f).$$

§47.1.2 As an Equivalence Class of Tangents to Paths

For this method, we will leverage one of the gifts that manifolds give us: comparison to $\mathbb{R}^n$. If we are given a smooth path $\gamma : (-\epsilon, \epsilon) \to M$, where M is an n-manifold, then we may look at $\gamma(0) \in U \subseteq M$ and consider $(\varphi \circ \gamma)(0) \in \mathbb{R}^n$. Since $\varphi \circ \gamma : (-\epsilon, \epsilon) \to \mathbb{R}^n$, the concept of a derivative exists and we can define $(\varphi \circ \gamma)'(0)$, which is the usual tangent vector to a path in $\mathbb{R}^n$. We then regard this derivative as the definition of a tangent vector to M at $p = \gamma(0)$, and we can break for lunch, right?

Unfortunately, our gazpacho must wait. We have some details to iron out. Suppose that we have two curves γ_1 and γ_2 that both pass through p and have the same slope at 0. We want these two paths to represent the same tangent vector. This can be remedied by attaching an equivalence relation

$$\gamma_1 \sim \gamma_2 \quad \text{if there exists a chart } \varphi \text{ such that } (\varphi \circ \gamma_1)'(0) = (\varphi \circ \gamma_2)'(0).$$

It might seem problematic that our definition relies on a particular choice of charts. We will show that as soon as we have a chart containing p that satisfies our definition, then all charts containing p will satisfy it as well.

Finally, we will need to give a vector space structure to our construction. This is done by declaring that addition and scalar multiplication of tangent vectors are defined in local coordinates.

Lemma 47.1.1.
Let M be a manifold and $p \in M$. Let

$$V = \{\gamma : (-\epsilon, \epsilon) \to M \mid \gamma(0) = p,\ \gamma \text{ is smooth.}\}.$$

Define a relation $\sim$ on V, $\gamma_1 \sim \gamma_2$ if there is a chart φ such that $(\varphi \circ \gamma_1)'(0) = (\varphi \circ \gamma_2)'(0)$. Then $\sim$ is an equivalence relation on V.

Proof.
Reflexivity and symmetry are easy to check.
Transitivity requires a bit more work. Suppose that $\gamma_1 \sim \gamma_2$ and $\gamma_2 \sim \gamma_3$. Then, by definition, there are coordinate charts φ and

ψ such that

$$(\varphi \circ \gamma_1)'(0) = (\varphi \circ \gamma_2)'(0) \quad \text{and} \quad (\psi \circ \gamma_2)'(0) = (\psi \circ \gamma_3)'(0).$$

Since φ and ψ are charts containing $\gamma_i(0) = p$, we have that $\psi \circ \varphi^{-1}$ is a smooth map from $\mathbb{R}^n$ to $\mathbb{R}^n$. By the chain rule,

$$\begin{aligned}
(\psi \circ \gamma_1)'(0) &= \left(\psi \circ \varphi^{-1} \circ \varphi \circ \gamma_1\right)'(0) \\
&= \left(\left[\psi \circ \varphi^{-1}\right](\varphi(\gamma_1(0)))\right)' \\
&= \left(\left[\psi \circ \varphi^{-1}\right](\varphi(p))\right)' \\
&= D(\psi \circ \varphi^{-1})|_{\varphi(p)} \cdot (\varphi \circ \gamma_1)'(0).
\end{aligned}$$

Since $\gamma_1(0) = \gamma_2(0) = p$, we have $\varphi(\gamma_1(0)) = \varphi(\gamma_2(0)) = \varphi(p)$. Therefore, $D(\psi \circ \varphi^{-1})|_{\varphi(\gamma_1(0))} = D(\psi \circ \varphi^{-1})|_{\varphi(\gamma_2(0))} = D(\psi \circ \varphi^{-1})|_{\varphi(p)}$.

Using this and the fact that $(\varphi \circ \gamma_1)'(0) = (\varphi \circ \gamma_2)'(0)$, we get:

$$\begin{aligned}
(\psi \circ \gamma_1)'(0) &= D(\psi \circ \varphi^{-1})|_{\varphi(p)} \cdot (\varphi \circ \gamma_1)'(0) \\
&= D(\psi \circ \varphi^{-1})|_{\varphi(p)} \cdot (\varphi \circ \gamma_2)'(0) && \text{(Since } (\varphi \circ \gamma_1)'(0) = (\varphi \circ \gamma_2)'(0)\text{)} \\
&= \left(\psi \circ \varphi^{-1} \circ \varphi \circ \gamma_2\right)'(0) && \text{(By the chain rule)} \\
&= (\psi \circ \gamma_2)'(0) \\
&= (\psi \circ \gamma_3)'(0) && \text{(Since } (\psi \circ \gamma_2)'(0) = (\psi \circ \gamma_3)'(0)\text{.)}
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, $\gamma_1 \sim \gamma_3$, establishing transitivity. ∎

Lie Groups, Lie Algebras, and their Representations

48 Definition of a Lie Group and Basic Examples 191
48.1 Definitions 191
48.2 Quaternions 191
48.2.1 Basic Definition 192
48.2.2 Quaternionic Matrices 193

49 Definition of Lie algebras 194
49.1 Definitions and Examples 194

48 Definition of a Lie Group and Basic Examples

This chapter is intended to be read in parallel with the chapter on Lie algebras.

§48.1 Definitions

Definition 48.1.1.
A **topological group** is a group G equipped with a topology such that the map

$$G \times G \to G, \quad (g, h) \mapsto gh^{-1}$$

is continuous (where $G \times G$ carries the product topology).

Lemma 48.1.1.
A group G is a topological group if and only if the maps

$$G \times G \to G, \quad (g, h) \mapsto gh$$

and

$$G \to G, \quad g \mapsto g^{-1}$$

are continuous.

Proof.
$\Rightarrow$ Suppose G is a topological group. Then the map

$$f \colon G \times G \to G, \quad (g, h) \mapsto gh^{-1}$$

is continuous by definition.

Define the embedding map $\mathrm{emb} \colon G \to G \times G$ by

$$\mathrm{emb}(g) := (e, g),$$

where e is the identity element of G. This map is continuous, since it is the product of the constant map $g \mapsto e$ and the identity map $g \mapsto g$.

Then the composition

$$G \xrightarrow{\mathrm{emb}} G \times G \xrightarrow{f} G,$$

given by $g \mapsto f(e, g) = eg^{-1} = g^{-1}$, is continuous. Hence, inversion $g \mapsto g^{-1}$ is continuous.

Now we show that the multiplication map $G \times G \to G$, given by $(g, h) \mapsto gh$, is continuous.

Consider the composition of the following two continuous maps:

$$G \times G \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id} \times \mathrm{inv}} G \times G, \quad (g, h) \mapsto (g, h^{-1}),$$
$$G \times G \xrightarrow{f} G, \quad (g, h) \mapsto gh^{-1},$$

where $\mathrm{inv}(h) = h^{-1}$, and $f(g, h) = gh^{-1}$.

Then their composition is:

$$(g, h) \mapsto f(g, h^{-1}) = g(h^{-1})^{-1} = gh.$$

Since both maps are continuous, the composition is continuous. Hence the multiplication map is continuous. ∎

§48.2 Quaternions

A useful source of examples of Lie groups involves the quaternions. We will dedicate this section to defining them and exploring some of their properties.

§48.2.1 Basic Definition

Definition 48.2.1.
The **quaternions**, denoted $\mathbb{H}$, are defined to be the associative real algebra

$$\mathbb{H} = \left\{a + b\mathbf{i} + c\mathbf{j} + d\mathbf{k} \;\middle|\; a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{R}\right\},$$

where the fundamental quaternion units satisfy

$$\mathbf{i}^2 = \mathbf{j}^2 = \mathbf{k}^2 = \mathbf{ijk} = -1.$$

Lemma 48.2.1.
The quaternion units obey the following multiplication rules:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{ij} &= \mathbf{k}, & \mathbf{ji} &= -\mathbf{k}, \\ \mathbf{jk} &= \mathbf{i}, & \mathbf{kj} &= -\mathbf{i}, \\ \mathbf{ki} &= \mathbf{j}, & \mathbf{ik} &= -\mathbf{j}. \end{aligned}$$

Proof.
We will just show one of these equalities. The rest are very similar.
We have

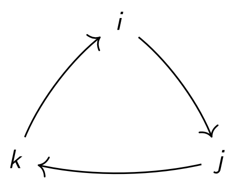
$$\mathbf{ijk} = -1$$

Multiplying on the right by $\mathbf{k}$ gives us

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{ijkk} &= -\mathbf{k} \\ -1\mathbf{ij} &= -\mathbf{k} \text{ since } \mathbf{k}^2 = -1 \\ \mathbf{ij} &= \mathbf{k} \end{aligned}$$

∎

The products of $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{k}$ can be memorized with the following diagram:



Definition 48.2.2.
The **real quaternions** is the set

$$\mathfrak{Re}(\mathbb{H}) = \{a = a1 \in \mathbb{H} | a \in \mathbb{R}\}.$$

The **imaginary quaternions** are similarly defined

$$\mathfrak{Im}(\mathbb{H}) = \{b\mathbf{i} + c\mathbf{j} + d\mathbf{k} | b, c, d \in \mathbb{R}\}$$

Definition 48.2.3.
The **conjugate** of a quaternion $w = a + b\mathbf{i} + c\mathbf{j} + d\mathbf{k}$ is

$$\overline{w} = a - b\mathbf{i} - c\mathbf{j} - d\mathbf{k}$$

and the **norm squared** is

$$||w||^2 = a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + d^2$$

Lemma 48.2.2.
For a quaternion $w = a + b\mathbf{i} + c\mathbf{j} + d\mathbf{k}$, we have:

$$||w||^2 = w\overline{w} = \overline{w}w.$$

Proof.
Let $w = a + b\mathbf{i} + c\mathbf{j} + d\mathbf{k}$. Then the conjugate of w is:

$$\overline{w} = a - b\mathbf{i} - c\mathbf{j} - d\mathbf{k}.$$

Now compute:

$$\begin{aligned} w\overline{w} &= (a + b\mathbf{i} + c\mathbf{j} + d\mathbf{k})(a - b\mathbf{i} - c\mathbf{j} - d\mathbf{k}) \\ &= a^2 - ab\mathbf{i} - ac\mathbf{j} - ad\mathbf{k} + ab\mathbf{i} - b^2\mathbf{i}^2 - bc\mathbf{ij} - bd\mathbf{ik} \\ &\quad + ac\mathbf{j} - bc\mathbf{ji} - c^2\mathbf{j}^2 - cd\mathbf{jk} \\ &\quad + ad\mathbf{k} - bd\mathbf{ki} - cd\mathbf{kj} - d^2\mathbf{k}^2 \end{aligned}$$

Substituting in:

$$\begin{aligned} w\overline{w} = a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + d^2 \\ - bc\mathbf{k} - bd(-\mathbf{j}) - bc(-\mathbf{k}) - cd\mathbf{i} \\ + bd\mathbf{j} + cd(-\mathbf{i}) \\ = a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + d^2 \quad \text{(all imaginary terms cancel out)}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore:

$$w\overline{w} = \|w\|^2 = a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + d^2.$$

Similarly, $\overline{w}w = \|w\|^2$, since quaternion norm is preserved under conjugation order.

■

§48.2.2 Quaternionic Matrices

Since any quaternion $q \in \mathbb{H}$ can be written uniquely as $q = q_1 + \mathbf{j}q_2$ for $q_1, q_2 \in \mathbb{C}$, any $n \times n$ quaternionic matrix $A \in \operatorname{Mat}(\mathbb{H}, n \times n)$ can be written uniquely as $A = A_1 + \mathbf{j}A_2$ for $A_1, A_2 \in \operatorname{Mat}(\mathbb{C}, n \times n)$. This allows us to define the following.

Definition 48.2.4.
Let $A \in \operatorname{Mat}(\mathbb{H}, n \times n)$ and $A_1, A_2 \in \operatorname{Mat}(\mathbb{C}, n \times n)$ such that $A = A_1 + \mathbf{j}A_2$. The **adjoint** of A is the matrix $\chi_A \in \operatorname{Mat}(\mathbb{C}, 2n \times 2n)$ defined to be

$$\chi_A = \begin{pmatrix} A_1 & -\overline{A_2} \\ A_2 & \overline{A_1} \end{pmatrix}$$

49 Definition of Lie algebras

§49.1 Definitions and Examples

Definition 49.1.1.
A **Lie algebra** is a vector space $\mathfrak{g}$ equipped with a bilinear map $[\cdot,\cdot] : \mathfrak{g} \times \mathfrak{g} \to \mathfrak{g}$ such that the following properties hold:

Skew-symmetry
For all $x, y \in \mathfrak{g}$, we have
$$[x, y] = -[y, x].$$

Jacobi identity
For all $x, y, z \in \mathfrak{g}$, we have
$$[x, [y, z]] + [y, [z, x]] + [z, [x, y]] = 0.$$

Example 49.1.1.
Suppose that $\mathbf{V}$ is a vector space. The set of linear maps $\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V})$ can be made into a Lie algebra where
$$[\varphi, \psi] := \varphi \circ \psi - \psi \circ \varphi$$
for all $\varphi, \psi \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V})$.

Example 49.1.2.
Suppose that $\mathbf{V}$ is vector space with some multiplication equipped. Recall that a derivation on V is any linear map $\varphi : \mathbf{V} \to \mathbf{V}$ such that
$$\varphi(\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{y}) = \varphi(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{y} + \mathbf{x} \cdot \varphi(\mathbf{y}).$$
The collection of all such linear maps is denoted by $\mathrm{Der}(\mathbf{V})$. Then $\mathrm{Der}(\mathbf{V})$ is a **Lie subalgebra** of $\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V})$. To show this, pick $\varphi, \psi \in \mathrm{Der}(\mathbf{V})$. Then,
$$\begin{aligned}
[\varphi, \psi](\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{y}) &= (\varphi \circ \psi - \psi \circ \varphi)(\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{y}) \\
&= (\varphi \circ \psi)(\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{y}) - (\psi \circ \varphi)(\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{y}) \\
&= \varphi(\psi(\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{y})) - \psi(\varphi(\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{y})) \\
&= \varphi(\psi(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{y} + \mathbf{x} \cdot \psi(\mathbf{y})) - \psi(\varphi(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{y} + \mathbf{x} \cdot \varphi(\mathbf{y})) \\
&= \varphi(\psi(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{y}) + \varphi(\mathbf{x} \cdot \psi(\mathbf{y})) - \psi(\varphi(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{y}) - \psi(\mathbf{x} \cdot \varphi(\mathbf{y})) \\
&= \varphi(\psi(\mathbf{x})) \cdot \mathbf{y} + \psi(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \varphi(\mathbf{y}) + \varphi(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \psi(\mathbf{y}) + \mathbf{x} \cdot \varphi(\psi(\mathbf{y})) \\
&\quad - \psi(\varphi(\mathbf{x})) \cdot \mathbf{y} - \varphi(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \psi(\mathbf{y}) - \psi(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \varphi(\mathbf{y}) - \mathbf{x} \cdot \psi(\varphi(\mathbf{y})) \\
&= \varphi(\psi(\mathbf{x})) \cdot \mathbf{y} + \cancel{\psi(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \varphi(\mathbf{y})} + \cancel{\varphi(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \psi(\mathbf{y})} + \mathbf{x} \cdot \varphi(\psi(\mathbf{y})) \\
&\quad - \psi(\varphi(\mathbf{x})) \cdot \mathbf{y} - \cancel{\varphi(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \psi(\mathbf{y})} - \cancel{\psi(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \varphi(\mathbf{y})} - \mathbf{x} \cdot \psi(\varphi(\mathbf{y})) \\
&= (\varphi \circ \psi)(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{y} - (\psi \circ \varphi)(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{y} + \mathbf{x} \cdot (\varphi \circ \psi)(\mathbf{y}) - \mathbf{x} \cdot (\psi \circ \varphi)(\mathbf{y}) \\
&= [\varphi, \psi](\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{y} + \mathbf{x} \cdot [\varphi, \psi](\mathbf{y})
\end{aligned}$$
Hence $[\varphi, \psi] \in \mathrm{Der}(\mathbf{V})$.

Gauge Theory

50 Fiber Bundles 197
50.1 General Fiber Bundles 197

50 Fiber Bundles

§50.1 General Fiber Bundles

Definition 50.1.1.
Let $\rho : E \to M$ be surjective smooth map between smooth manifolds. We call M the **base space**, E the **total space**, and ρ the **projection**.

We call the set
$$\rho^{-1}(x) = \{e \in E \mid \rho(e) = x\}$$
the **fiber of ρ over x**.
Similarly if $U \subset M$ we call the set
$$\rho^{-1}(U) = \{e \in E \mid \rho(e) \in U\}$$
the **fiber of ρ over U**.

If $s : M \to E$ is a differentiable map such that
$$\rho \circ s = \mathrm{Id}_M$$
we call s a **global section** of ρ.
If $U \subset M$ is open and $s : U \to E$ is a differentiable map such that
$$\rho \circ s = \mathrm{Id}_U$$
we call s a **local section** of ρ.

The quartet $(E, \rho, M; F)$ is called a **fiber bundle** if for every $x \in M$, there is an open set $U \subseteq M$ and diffeomorphism
$$\varphi_U : \rho^{-1}(U) \to U \times F$$
such that
$$\mathrm{pr}_1 \circ \varphi_U = \rho$$
Where $\mathrm{pr}_1 : U \times F \to U$ is given by $\mathrm{pr}_1(u, f) = u$ for all $u \in U$ and $f \in F$. In other words, the following diagram commutes

$$\begin{tikzcd} \rho^{-1}(U) \arrow[r, "\varphi_U"] \arrow[dr, "\rho"'] & U \times F \arrow[d, "\mathrm{pr}_1"] \\ & U \end{tikzcd}$$

To communicate this, we will write

$$\begin{tikzcd} F \arrow[r] & E \arrow[d, "\rho"] \\ & M \end{tikzcd}$$

or
$$F \to E \xrightarrow{\rho} M$$
We can think of this diagram as say F fits into E as fiber and then is projected down into M.

The way I like to think of fiber bundles is this. Someone hands you M and copies of F indexed by M (imagine that each copy of F has a little nametag on it—like coat hooks in a kindergarten classroom, where each hook is labeled with a child's name. Here, each point $x \in M$ gets their own personal copy of F). Since M is a manifold, it carries topological information and we use that topology as instructions to glue our copies of F together to form E.

First Course in Number Theory

51 Introduction 199
51.1 Well-Ordered Sets and Induction 199
51.2 The Division Algorithm 199

51 Introduction

§51.1 Well-Ordered Sets and Induction

Definition 51.1.1.
An ordered set X is said to be **well-ordered** if every non-empty subset of X contains a minimal element.

Definition 51.1.2.
An ordered set X is said to satisfy the **principle of (strong) induction** if for every statement $P(x)$ (that is, a map $P : X \to \{\text{True}, \text{False}\}$) and every element $x_0 \in X$ such that: for all $x \geq x_0$, if $P(y)$ is true for all y with $x_0 \leq y < x$, then $P(x)$ is true, it follows that $P(x)$ is true for all $x \geq x_0$.

Note: In dealing whether to include 0 as a natural number, we adopt **the axiom of convinience**. For any statement involving $\mathbb{N}$ as the universal set, we leave it to the reader to deduce from context if $0 \in \mathbb{N}$ or $0 \notin \mathbb{N}$.

§51.2 The Division Algorithm

Theorem 51.2.1 (The Division Algorithm).
For any $a, b \in \mathbb{N}$, with $b > 0$, there exists unique $q \in \mathbb{N}$ called the **quotient** and unique $r \in \mathbb{N}$, with $0 \leq r < b$ called the **remainder** for which

$$a = bq + r.$$

Proof.
Let

$$S = \{\, n \in \mathbb{N} \mid n = a - bq \text{ for some } q \in \mathbb{N} \,\}.$$

Since $q = 0$ gives $a - b \cdot 0 = a$, the set S is nonempty, so it has a least element; call that element r.

We claim $0 \leq r < b$. Certainly $r \geq 0$ because $r \in \mathbb{N}$. If $r \geq b$, write $r = a - bq_1$ for some $q_1 \in \mathbb{N}$. Then

$$r - b = a - b(q_1 + 1).$$

Since $r - b \geq 0$, the element $r - b$ lies in S and satisfies $r - b < r$, contradicting the minimality of r. Hence $r < b$.

Now suppose there are two such remainders r_1 and r_2 with $0 \leq r_1 < r_2 < b$. Write

$$r_1 = a - bq_1, \qquad r_2 = a - bq_2.$$

Subtracting gives

$$r_2 - r_1 = b(q_1 - q_2).$$

Because $r_2 - r_1 > 0$, we have $q_1 - q_2 > 0$, so $q_1 - q_2 \in \mathbb{N}$. But then $b(q_1 - q_2) \geq b$, contradicting $r_2 - r_1 < b$. Thus the remainder r is unique.

Finally, once r is fixed, the quotient q is determined by $q = \dfrac{a - r}{b}$, so q is also unique. ∎

Definition 51.2.1.
Suppose that $a, b \in \mathbb{N}$ with $b > 0$. We say that b **divides** a, denoted as $b \mid a$ if the remainder given by the division algorithm of a by b is 0. If b does not divide a, we write $b \nmid a$.

Example 51.2.1.
For any natural number n, $1 \mid n$ and $n \mid n$.

Exercise 51.2.1.
Suppose that $n > 2$. Show that $n - 1 \nmid n$.

Solution.

Since $n > 2$, we have $n - 1 \geq 2$. By the division algorithm,

$$n = 1 \cdot (n - 1) + 1.$$

The remainder is 1, which satisfies $0 < 1 < n - 1$. Because the remainder is not 0, we conclude that $n - 1 \nmid n$. ●

Definition 51.2.2.
Suppose $n \in \mathbb{N}$ with $n > 1$. n is **prime** if the only natural numbers that divide a are 1 and n. n is **composite** if it is not prime.
Note: 1 is neither composite nor prime. It is **unit**.

Appendix

A Naive Approach to Set Theory 203
A.1 Sets and Their Operations 203
A.1.1 Sets 203
A.1.2 Unions, Intersections, and Compliments 204
A.2 Cartesian Products, Relations, and Functions 206
A.2.1 Relations 206
A.2.2 Functions 208

B Inequalities 211
B.1 Some Basic Algebraic Inequalities 211
B.2 Introduction to the Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality 211

A Naive Approach to Set Theory

§A.1 Sets and Their Operations

§A.1.1 Sets

For much of modern math, the "bottom turtle" for the objects we study are sets.

Definition A.1.1.
A **set**, roughly speaking, is a collection of elements. We typically denote a set with a capital letter X and their **elements** are often denoted with a lowercase letter. x.
If some element x belongs to X, we will write this as
$$x \in X.$$
Otherwise, if the element x is **not** a member of the set X, we will denote this by
$$x \notin X.$$

There are multiple ways to describe a set.
For example, we may explicitly list out the elements.

Example A.1.1.
Let
$$X = \{a, b, c\}.$$
This is precisely the set X which contains only the elements a, b, c.

We might begin with an existing set and then apply a filter to generate a new set. In other words, if we are given a set Y, we may construct a new set X of the form
$$X = \{x \in Y \mid P(x)\}$$
where $P(x)$ is some statement involving the element x and whenever $P(x)$ is true, we include the element x in the set X.

Example A.1.2.
Let $\mathbb{R}$ denote the collection of real numbers. Then we may construct $\mathbb{R}^+$ to be
$$\mathbb{R}^+ = \{x \in \mathbb{R} \mid x > 0\}$$
which is the set of all positive real numbers.

Definition A.1.2.
Let X and Y each be sets. If X and Y each contain the exact same elements, we say that they are the same set and write $X = Y$.

Example A.1.3.
If $X = \{1, 2, 3\}$ and $Y = \{1, 2, 3\}$, then X and Y are the same set and we write $X = Y$.
If $Z = \{1, 2\}$, it is clear that $X \neq Z$ and $Y \neq Z$ since $3 \in X$ and $3 \in Y$ but $3 \notin Z$.

Definition A.1.3.
Let X and Y each be sets. We say that X is a **subset** of Y if $x \in Y$ whenever $x \in X$. We write this as
$$X \subseteq Y$$
. If Y contains at least one element not contained in X, we say that X is a **subset** subset of Y and denote it by $X \subset Y$.

Example A.1.4.
Using our previous example of X, Y and Z, it is clear that
$$Z \subseteq X \quad \text{and} \quad Z \subseteq Y$$

Theorem A.1.1.
For any two sets X and Y,
$$X = Y \iff X \subseteq Y \text{ and } Y \subseteq X.$$

Proof.
$\Rightarrow$ Suppose that $X = Y$. Then, by definition, X and Y contain exactly the same elements. Therefore, each element of X must also be in Y and vice-versa. So it must be the case that $X \subseteq Y$ and $Y \subseteq X$.
$\Leftarrow$ Now suppose that $X \subseteq Y$ and $Y \subseteq X$. If $x \in X$, then, by the fact that $X \subseteq Y$, we have that $x \in Y$. In other words, X contains nno elements that are not also in Y. We can just as easily conclude that Y contains no elements that cannot be found in X. Since X and Y contain exactly the same elements, it follows that $X = Y$. ■

Definition A.1.4.
The **empty set**, denoted as $\varnothing$, is the set with no elements.

Lemma A.1.2.
The empty set is unique and it is a subset of every set.

Proof.
It is not hard to show that any other set that contains no elements must be identical to the empty set. To show for any set X, that $\varnothing \subseteq X$, we will write out explicitly what it means for $\varnothing \subseteq X$. We have
$$x \in \varnothing \Rightarrow x \in X.$$
However, the statement $x \in \varnothing$ is false ,by definition. So the entire implication becomes true. ■

§A.1.2 Unions, Intersections, and Compliments

Definition A.1.5.
Let X and Y be any sets. Then we define the **union** of the sets X and Y, denoted by $X \cup Y$ is the new set defined by
$$X \cup Y = \{z \mid z \in X \text{ or } z \in Y\}$$

Example A.1.5.
Let $X = \{1, 2, 3\}$ and $Y = \{3, 4, 5\}$. Then,
$$X \cup Y = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$$

Definition A.1.6.
Let X and Y be sets. Then the **intersection** of X and Y, denoted by $X \cap Y$ is the set
$$X \cap Y = \{z \mid z \in X \text{ and } z \in Y\}$$

Example A.1.6.
Again letting $X = \{1, 2, 3\}$ and $Y = \{3, 4, 5\}$. Then,
$$X \cap Y = \{3\}$$

Theorem A.1.3.
For any sets X, Y, and Z, we have
$$X \cap (Y \cup Z) = (X \cap Y) \cup (X \cap Z).$$

Proof.
Suppose $x \in X \cap (Y \cup Z)$. Then $x \in X$ and $x \in Y \cup Z$. Since $x \in Y \cup Z$, $x \in Y$ or $x \in Z$. Without loss of generality, we can assume $x \in Y$. Since $x \in X$ and $x \in Y$, we have $x \in X \cap Y$. So $x \in (X \cap Y) \cup (X \cap Z)$. This demonstrates that
$$X \cap (Y \cup Z) \subseteq (X \cap Y) \cup (X \cap Z)$$
For the reverse direction, assume that $x \in (X \cap Y) \cup (X \cap Z)$. The $x \in (X \cap Y)$ or $x \in (X \cap Z)$. Again, without loss of generality, assume that $x \in X \cap Z$. Then $x \in X$ and $x \in Z$. Therefore, $x \in Y \cup Z$. So we can conclude that $x \in X \cap (Y \cup Z)$.

Together with the previous conclusion, we have

$$X \cap (Y \cup Z) = (X \cap Y) \cup (X \cap Z),$$

as desired. ■

Theorem A.1.4.
For any sets X, Y, Z, we have

$$X \cup (Y \cap Z) = (X \cup Y) \cap (X \cup Z)$$

Proof.
Suppose $x \in X \cup (Y \cap Z)$. Then $x \in X$ or $x \in Y \cap Z$. Take the case that $x \in X$. Then clearly $x \in X \cup Y$ and $x \in X \cup Z$. So $x \in (X \cup Y) \cap (X \cup Z)$. If we take the case that $x \in Y \cap Z$. Then $x \in Y$ and $x \in Z$. So clearly $x \in X \cup Y$ and $x \in X \cup Z$. Therefore, $x \in (X \cup Y) \cap (X \cup Z)$. We have shown that

$$X \cup (Y \cap Z) \subseteq (X \cup Y) \cap (X \cup Z)$$

Now suppose that $x \in (X \cup Y) \cap (X \cup Z)$. Then $x \in (X \cup Y)$ and $x \in (X \cup Z)$. Now if $x \in X$, we trivially have that $x \in X \in X \cup (Y \cap Z)$. So we take the case that $x \notin X$. So x must be contained in Y and in Z. So $x \in Y \cap Z$. So $x \in X \cup (Y \cap Z)$. With the previous conclusion, we have

$$X \cup (Y \cap Z) = (X \cup Y) \cap (X \cup Z),$$

as desired. ■

Definition A.1.7.
Suppose that X and Y are sets such that $Y \subseteq X$. Then the **set compliment** of Y relative to X is the set $X - Y$ (or Y^C if the set X is understood in context), defined by

$$X - Y = Y^C = \{x \in X \mid x \notin Y\}$$

Example A.1.7.
Let $X = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ and $Y = \{1.3\}$. Then

$$X - Y = \{2, 4\}$$

Exercise A.1.1.
For any set X, we have

$$X \cap \varnothing = \varnothing \text{ and } X \cup \varnothing = X$$

Solution.
Trivial. ●

Theorem A.1.5 (DeMorgan's Laws).
Suppose X, Y, and Z are sets with $X \subseteq Z$ and $Y \subseteq Z$. Then

$$(X \cup Y)^C = X^C \cap Y^C$$

and

$$(X \cap Y)^C = X^C \cup Y^C$$

Proof.
If either X or Y are the empty set or the universal set Z, then the conclusion is trivial so we will assume otherwise. We will first show

$$(X \cup Y)^C = X^C \cap Y^C$$

Suppose $x \in (X \cup Y)^C$. Then, by definition, $x \in Z$ but $x \notin X \cup Y$. Therefore, $x \notin X$ and $x \notin Y$. This gives us $x \in X^C$ and $x \in Y^C$. So $x \in X^C \cap Y^C$. So

$$(X \cup Y)^C \subseteq X^C \cap Y^C$$

Now assume $x \in X^C \cap Y^C$. By definition, $x \in X^C$ and $x \in Y^C$. In other words, $x \in Z$ but $x \notin X$ and $x \notin Y$. So $x \notin X \cup Y$ or

$x \in (X \cup Y)^C$. Taken with the earlier conclusion, we have

$$(X \cup Y)^C = X^C \cap Y^C.$$

Now we will show

$$(X \cap Y)^C = X^C \cup Y^C$$

Assume that $x \in (X \cap Y)^C$. Then $x \notin X \cap Y$. So it must be the case that $x \notin X$ or $x \notin Y$ or both. Without loss of generality, we will assume that $x \notin X$. Then $x \in X^C$. So then, $x \in X^C \cup Y^C$. This gives us

$$(X \cap Y)^C \subseteq X^C \cup Y^C.$$

Now assume $x \in X^C \cup Y^C$. Without loss of generality, we may assume that $x \in Y^C$. This gives us that $x \notin Y$ so $x \notin X \cap Y$. So then $x \in (X \cap Y)^C$. Together with the previous conclusion, we have

$$(X \cap Y)^C = X^C \cup Y^C$$

which concludes this proof. ■

§A.2 Cartesian Products, Relations, and Functions

§A.2.1 Relations

Definition A.2.1.
Let X and Y be non-empty sets. Then the **Cartesian product** of X and Y is the following set:

$$X \times Y = \{(x, y) \mid x \in X,\ y \in Y\}.$$

Example A.2.1.
Suppose $X = \{1, 2, 3\}$ and $Y = \{a, b\}$. Then

$$X \times Y = \{(1, a), (1, b), (2, a), (2, b), (3, a), (3, b)\}$$

Definition A.2.2.
A **relation** on a non-empty set X is any subset R of the Cartesian product $X \times X$. If the ordered pair $(x, y) \in R$, we will often express this as xRy.

Definition A.2.3.
Let S be a set. An **order** on S is a relation $<$ with following two properties.

i) For every $x, y \in S$ exactly one of the following hold:

$$x < y \quad y < x \quad x = y$$

ii) If $x < y$ and $y < z$, then $x < z$.

Definition A.2.4.
An **equivalence relation** is a relation $\sim$ on a non-empty set X such that the following criteria hold:

i) For every $x \in X$, $x \sim x$. This is called the **reflexive** property.

ii) For every $x, y \in X$, $x \sim y$ implies $y \sim x$. This is called the **symmetric** property.

iii) For every $x, y, z \in X$, $x \sim y$ and $y \sim z$ implies $x \sim z$. This is called the **transitive** property.

The set

$$A_x = \{y \in X \mid x \sim y\}$$

is called the **equivalence class** of x.

Example A.2.2.
Let $X = \{a, b, c\}$. The reader can verify that the set

$$\sim = \{(a, a), (a, b), (b, a), (b, b), (c, c)\}$$

is an equivalence relation.

Example A.2.3 (Construction of the rational numbers).
For a non-trivial example, suppose $\mathbb{Z}$ is the set of integers. We define an equivalence relation on $\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z} - \{(x, 0) \mid x \in \mathbb{Z}\}$ by

$$(x_1, y_1) \sim (x_2, y_2) \iff x_1 \cdot y_2 = x_2 \cdot y_1.$$

The reflexive and symmetric properties are trivial. So we will just demonstrate transitivity.
Suppose that

$$(x_1, y_1) \sim (x_2, y_2) \text{ and } (x_2, y_2) \sim (x_3, y_3)$$

Then,

$$\begin{aligned}
x_1 \cdot y_2 &= x_2 \cdot y_1 && (\text{Since } (x_1, y_1) \sim (x_2, y_2)) \\
y_3 \cdot (x_1 \cdot y_2) &= y_3 \cdot (x_2 \cdot y_1) && (\text{Since } y_3 \neq 0) \\
(x_1 \cdot y_3) \cdot y_2 &= (x_2 \cdot y_3) \cdot y_1 && (\text{Rearranging}) \\
(x_1 \cdot y_3) \cdot y_2 &= (x_3 \cdot y_2) \cdot y_1 && (\text{Since } (x_2, y_2) \sim (x_3, y_3)) \\
(x_1 \cdot y_3) \cdot y_2 &= (x_3 \cdot y_1) \cdot y_2 && (\text{Rearranging}) \\
(x_1 \cdot y_3) \cdot y_2 - (x_3 \cdot y_1) \cdot y_2 &= 0 \\
(x_1 \cdot y_3 - x_3 \cdot y_1) \cdot y_2 &= 0 && (\text{By the disributive law of the integers}) \\
x_1 \cdot y_3 - x_3 \cdot y_1 &= 0 && (\text{Since the } \mathbb{Z} \text{ is an integral domain and } y_2 \neq 0) \\
x_1 \cdot y_3 &= x_3 \cdot y_1 \\
(x_1, y_1) &\sim (x_3, y_3)
\end{aligned}$$

We will finish this demonstration by writing $\frac{x_1}{y_1}$ instead of (x_1, y_1).
We call this set $\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z} - \{(x, 0)\}$ together with this identification, the **rational numbers** and denote it by $\mathbb{Q}$.

Building on the previous example, we notice that even if $(1, 2)$ and $(3, 6)$ are distinct elements of $\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z} - \{(x, 0)\}$, they are the same as elements of $\mathbb{Q}$. This motivates the following definition and theorem.

Definition A.2.5.
A **partition** P on a set X is a collection of subsets X_α of X such that the following criteria hold:

i) $\bigcup_{\alpha} X_\alpha = X$

ii) For any distinct sets X_α, X_β in the partition P, we have $X_\alpha \cap X_\beta = \varnothing$

Theorem A.2.1.
Any equivalence class $\sim$ on a non-empty set X forms a partition. And similarly, for every partition P on a non-empty set X, there exists an equivalence relation $\sim$ whose equivalence classes are precisely the subsets described by the partition.

Proof.
Let $X_\alpha, \alpha \in A$ denote the collection of equivalence classes as defined by the equivalence relation $\sim$ on X. The reflexive condition guarantees that every element of X is in some equivalence class so

$$\bigcup_{\alpha \in A} X_\alpha = X$$

is automatically satisfied. Now suppose

$$X_a = \{x \in X \mid a \sim x\}$$
$$X_b = \{x \in X \mid b \sim x\}$$

are the equivalence classes of a and b, each members of X. We want to show that they are either disjoint or identical. So suppose that $X_a \cap X_b$ contained at least one element call it c. Now pick any element $x_a \in X_a$. Then,

$$\begin{aligned}
&a \sim c \quad a \sim x_a && \text{(Since } c, x_a \in X_a\text{)}\\
&c \sim a \quad a \sim x_a && \text{(Applying symmetry)}\\
&c \sim x_a && \text{(Applying transitivity)}\\
&b \sim c \quad c \sim x_a && \text{(Since } c \in X_b\text{)}\\
&b \sim x_a && \text{(Applying transitivity)}
\end{aligned}$$

This shows that $x_a \in X_b$ so $X_a \subseteq X_b$. It is similar to show that $X_b \subseteq X_a$. In other words, we have shown that X_a and X_b contain at least one element in common, then $X_a = X_b$.
The other part of this theorem is trivial. If $P = \{X_\alpha\}$ is a partition, then simply say $x \sim y$ if they belong to same subset defined by the partition. Verifying that this defines an equivalence relation is an exercise. ■

§A.2.2 Functions

We arrive at one of the most crucial objects of study in mathematics.

Definition A.2.6.
A **function** between two non-empty sets X and Y is a relation f that satisfies the following conditions:

i) For every $x \in X$, there exists some $y \in Y$ such that $(x, y) \in f$.

ii) (x, y) and $\left(x, y'\right)$ are members of f if and only if $y = y'$.

We will write $f : X \to Y$ if f is function from X to Y. We will also write $f : x \mapsto y$ (read: f maps x to y) or $y = f(x)$(read: $y = f$ of x) if $(x, y) \in f$.
Moreover, we call X the **domain** of f and Y the **codomain**.

Definition A.2.7.
Suppose X, Y, and Z are sets and $f : X \to Y$, $g : Y \to Z$. We define the **composite** function $g \circ f : X \to Z$ as follows:

$$(x, z) \in g \circ f \text{ if } (x, y) \in f \text{ and } (y, z) \in g.$$

In other words, if $y = f(x)$ and $z = g(y)$, we define $z = (g \circ f)(x)$.

Definition A.2.8.
Suppose X and Y are sets, $f : X \to Y$ and $A \subset X$. We define the **restriction** of f to A, denoted by $f|_A : A \to Y$, as a new function

$$f|_A(a) := f(a) \quad \text{for every } a \in A.$$

In other words,

$$f|_A = f \cap (A \times Y).$$

Example A.2.4.
Let X be any set. We have a natural function called the **identity** function on X, $\mathrm{Id}_X : X \to X$, where

$$\mathrm{Id}_X(x) := x \quad \text{for every } x \in X.$$

Example A.2.5.
Let X be any non-empty set and $A \subseteq X$. We have the **characteristic function** of A, $\chi_A : X \to \{0, 1\}$, where

$$\chi_A(x) := \begin{cases} 1 & x \in A \\ 0 & x \notin A. \end{cases}$$

Definition A.2.9.
Let X and Y be sets and $f : X \to Y$ be a function. We say that f is **injective**, is **one-to-one**, or is an **injection** if for every

$x_1, x_2 \in X$, we have
$$x_1 \neq x_2 \implies f(x_1) \neq f(x_2).$$

Definition A.2.10.
Let X and Y be sets and $f : X \to Y$ be a function. We say that f is **surjective**, is **onto**, or is a **surjection** if for every $y \in Y$, there exists an $x \in X$ such that $y = f(x)$.

Definition A.2.11.
Let X and Y be sets and $f : X \to Y$ be a function. We say that f is **bijective** or is a **bijection** if it is both injective and surjective.

Definition A.2.12.
Suppose X and Y are sets and $f : X \to Y$, we say:

i) f has a **left-inverse** or is **left-invertable** if there exists a function $g : Y \to X$ such that $g \circ f = \mathrm{Id}_X$.

ii) f has a **right-inverse** or is **right-invertable** if there exists a function $g : Y \to X$ such that $f \circ g = \mathrm{Id}_Y$.

iii) f has a **two-sided-inverse** or is **invertable** if there exists a function $g : Y \to X$ such that the above two criteria hold.

Theorem A.2.2.
Suppose X and Y are sets and $f : X \to Y$ is a function. f has a left-inverse if and only f is an injection.

Proof.
$\Rightarrow$ For the forward implication, suppose that f is **not** injective. Then there are $x_1, x_2 \in X$ such that $f(x_1) = f(x_2)$ but $x_1 \neq x_2$. But then no possible function $g : Y \to X$ could be a left inverse since $(g \circ f)(x_1) = x_1$ and $(g \circ f)(x_2) = x_2$. cannot be simultaneously true.
$\Leftarrow$ Now suppose that f is injective. Then for any $y \in \mathrm{Img}(f)$, we define $g(y) = x$ whenever $y = f(x)$. If $y \notin \mathrm{Img}(f)$, then we fix an element $a \in X$ simply define $g(y) = a$. It is clear from construction that $g \circ f = \mathrm{Id}_X$ and the proof is complete. ■

Theorem A.2.3.
Suppose X and Y are sets and $f : X \to Y$ is a function. f has a right-inverse if and only if f is a surjection.

Proof.
$\Rightarrow$ Suppose that f is **not** surjective. Then, by definition, there exists at least one $y \in Y$ such that $y \notin \mathrm{Img}(f)$. Then for no function $g : Y \to X$ can we have $(f \circ g)(y) = y$. So f cannot have a right inverse.
$\Leftarrow$ Now suppose that f is surjective. Then for every $y \in Y$, there is some $x \in X$ such that $f(x) = y$. We then define $g(y) = x$ and f is not injective, we simply choose a particular x. By construction, it is clear that $(f \circ g) = \mathrm{Id}_Y$ and the proof is complete. ■

Theorem A.2.4.
Suppose X and Y are finite sets with the same number of elements. Then the following are equivalent for $f : X \to Y$:

i) f is bijective.

ii) f is injective.

iii) f is surjective.

Proof.
From the statement of the theorem, it suffices to show **ii** $\iff$ **iii**. We will proceed by induction on the cardinality of both sets.

The base case $|X| = |Y| = 1$ is trivial.

Suppose that the result holds up to $n - 1$.

$\Rightarrow$ Now suppose $|X| = |Y| = n$ and $f : X \to Y$ is injective. We fix some $a \in X$ and hence, some $f(a) \in Y$ and consider the restriction map $f|_{X\setminus\{a\}} : X \setminus \{a\} \to Y \setminus \{f(a)\}$. Since f is injective, the restriction is also injective. By the inductive hypothesis, $f|_{X\setminus\{a\}}$ is surjective onto $Y \setminus \{f(a)\}$. Therefore, f is surjective onto Y.

$\Leftarrow$ Now suppose $|X| = |Y| = n$ and $f : X \to Y$ is surjective. We fix some $a \in X$ and consider $f(a) \in Y$. Let's define the restriction $f|_{X\setminus\{a\}} : X \setminus \{a\} \to Y \setminus \{f(a)\}$. To ensure this restriction is well-defined, we need to verify that for all $b \in X \setminus \{a\}$, we have $f(b) \neq f(a)$.

Suppose for contradiction that there exists some $b \in X \setminus \{a\}$ such that $f(b) = f(a)$. Then f maps at least two elements a and b to the same value, meaning f maps at most $n - 1$ elements of X to distinct elements of Y. Since $|Y| = n$, there must be at least one element of Y that is not in the image of f, contradicting the assumption that f is surjective.

Therefore, the restriction $f|_{X\setminus\{a\}}$ is well-defined. Since $|X \setminus \{a\}| = |Y \setminus \{f(a)\}| = n-1$, and the restriction is surjective by construction, we can apply the inductive hypothesis to conclude that $f|_{X\setminus\{a\}}$ is also injective. This implies that f is injective on all of X. ■

B Inequalities

§B.1 Some Basic Algebraic Inequalities

Exercise B.1.1.
Show that $a^2 + b^2 \geq 2ab$ for all $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$.

Solution.
Since $(a - b)^2 \geq 0$, we have

$$a^2 - 2ab + b^2 \geq 0$$

or

$$a^2 + b^2 \geq 2ab.$$

●

§B.2 Introduction to the Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality

Theorem B.2.1 (Cauchy–Schwarz Inequality).
Suppose $\mathbf{V}$ is a real inner product space. For all $\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \in \mathbf{V}$, we have:

$$|\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle| \leq \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle^{1/2} \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle^{1/2}.$$

Proof.
Consider the vector

$$\mathbf{u} = \frac{\mathbf{v}}{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle^{1/2}} - \frac{\mathbf{w}}{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle^{1/2}}.$$

Since inner products are nonnegative on real inner product spaces,

$$\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u} \rangle \geq 0.$$

Expanding $\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u} \rangle$ gives:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u} \rangle &= \left\langle \frac{\mathbf{v}}{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle^{1/2}}, \frac{\mathbf{v}}{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle^{1/2}} \right\rangle - 2 \left\langle \frac{\mathbf{v}}{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle^{1/2}}, \frac{\mathbf{w}}{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle^{1/2}} \right\rangle + \left\langle \frac{\mathbf{w}}{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle^{1/2}}, \frac{\mathbf{w}}{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle^{1/2}} \right\rangle \\
&= \frac{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle} - 2 \cdot \frac{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle^{1/2} \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle^{1/2}} + \frac{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} \\
&= 1 - 2 \cdot \frac{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle^{1/2} \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle^{1/2}} + 1 \\
&= 2 - 2 \cdot \frac{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle^{1/2} \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle^{1/2}}.
\end{aligned}$$

Since this is ≥ 0, we conclude:

$$2 - 2 \cdot \frac{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle^{1/2} \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle^{1/2}} \geq 0,$$

which implies:

$$\frac{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle^{1/2} \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle^{1/2}} \leq 1.$$

If $\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle < 0$, the same argument applied to $-\mathbf{w}$ yields the inequality

$$|\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle| \leq \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle^{1/2} \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle^{1/2}.$$

∎

Example B.2.1.
In $\mathbb{R}^n$ with the standard dot product

$$\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle := \sum_{j=1}^{n} v_j w_j,$$

the Cauchy–Schwarz inequality becomes

$$\left| \sum_{j=1}^{n} v_j w_j \right| \leq \left(\sum_{j=1}^{n} v_j^2 \right)^{1/2} \left(\sum_{j=1}^{n} w_j^2 \right)^{1/2}.$$

Theorem B.2.2 (Cauchy–Schwarz Inequality (Complex Case))**.**
Let $\mathbf{V}$ be a complex inner product space. For all $\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \in \mathbf{V}$, we have:

$$\left| \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle \right| \leq \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle^{1/2} \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle^{1/2}.$$

Proof.
Let $\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \in \mathbf{V}$ be non-zero vectors and define for $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$ the function:

$$f(\lambda) = \langle \mathbf{v} - \lambda \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v} - \lambda \mathbf{w} \rangle.$$

Note that $f(\lambda) \geq 0$ by positive semi-definiteness. We can expand $f(\lambda)$ as

$$\begin{aligned} f(\lambda) &= \langle \mathbf{v} - \lambda \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v} - \lambda \mathbf{w} \rangle \\ &= \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} - \lambda \mathbf{w} \rangle + \langle -\lambda \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v} - \lambda \mathbf{w} \rangle \\ &= \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} - \lambda \mathbf{w} \rangle - \lambda \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v} - \lambda \mathbf{w} \rangle \\ &= \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle + \langle \mathbf{v}, -\lambda \mathbf{w} \rangle - \lambda \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v} \rangle - \lambda \langle \mathbf{w}, -\lambda \mathbf{w} \rangle \\ &= \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle - \overline{\lambda} \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle - \lambda \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v} \rangle + |\lambda|^2 \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle \end{aligned}$$

Now choose

$$\lambda = \frac{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}.$$

Substituting into the expanded $f(\lambda)$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} f\left(\frac{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} \right) &= \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle - \overline{\frac{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}} \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle - \frac{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v} \rangle + \left| \frac{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} \right|^2 \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle \\ &= \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle - \overline{\frac{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}} \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle - \frac{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} \overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} + \left| \frac{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} \right|^2 \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle \\ &= \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle - 2 \frac{\overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} + \left| \frac{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} \right|^2 \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle \\ &= \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle - 2 \frac{\overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} + \frac{\overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle \\ &= \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle - 2 \frac{\overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} + \frac{\overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} \\ &= \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle - \frac{\overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} \\ &= \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle - \frac{\left| \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle \right|^2}{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle} \end{aligned}$$

Finally we can apply the non-negativity of f,

$$\begin{aligned}0 &\le \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}\rangle - \frac{|\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle|^2}{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w}\rangle}\\ \frac{|\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle|^2}{\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w}\rangle} &\le \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}\rangle\\ |\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle|^2 &\le \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}\rangle \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w}\rangle\end{aligned}$$

and taking square roots

$$\boxed{|\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle| \le \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}\rangle^{1/2} \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w}\rangle^{1/2}}.$$

■

Example B.2.2.
Consider the complex inner product on $\mathbb{C}^n$ defined by:

$$\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\rangle := \sum_{j=1}^{n} v_j \overline{w_j}.$$

Then the Cauchy–Schwarz inequality becomes:

$$\left|\sum_{j=1}^{n} v_j \overline{w_j}\right| \le \left(\sum_{j=1}^{n} |v_j|^2\right)^{1/2} \left(\sum_{j=1}^{n} |w_j|^2\right)^{1/2}.$$

Example B.2.3.
Let $f, g \in L^2(\gamma)$, where $\gamma \subset \mathbb{C}$ is a piecewise smooth contour. Define the inner product:

$$\langle f, g\rangle := \int_\gamma f(z)\,\overline{g(z)}\,|\mathrm{d}z|.$$

Then the Cauchy–Schwarz inequality gives:

$$\left|\int_\gamma f(z)\,\overline{g(z)}\,|\mathrm{d}z|\right| \le \left(\int_\gamma |f(z)|^2\,|\mathrm{d}z|\right)^{1/2} \left(\int_\gamma |g(z)|^2\,|\mathrm{d}z|\right)^{1/2}.$$

Exercise B.2.1.
Show that

$$\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_j \le \sqrt{n \sum_{j=1}^{n} (a_j)^2}.$$

Solution.
Apply the Cauchy–Schwarz inequality to the vectors $\vec{a} = (a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n)$ and $\vec{b} = (1, 1, \ldots, 1) \in \mathbb{R}^n$. Then:

$$\left(\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_j \cdot 1\right)^2 \le \left(\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_j^2\right)\left(\sum_{j=1}^{n} 1^2\right) = \left(\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_j^2\right) \cdot n.$$

Taking square roots of both sides gives:

$$\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_j \le \sqrt{n \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_j^2}.$$

This proves the inequality. ●

References

Bibliography

[Axl97] Sheldon Axler. *Linear algebra done right*. New York: Springer, 1997. ISBN: 978-0-387-98258-8.

[SCW20] J. Stewart, D.K. Clegg, and S. Watson. *Calculus*. Cengage Learning, 2020. ISBN: 9780357043349.